

C O N F I D E N T I A L

W A R

D I A R Y

O F

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

JANUARY

1916.

VOLUME # 16 - 1.

WAR DIARY

14th Cdn. Battalion 1st Cdn. Division,  
from 1st to 31st January, 1916.

Volume 11.

Diary Text

2 Pages.

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR

DIARY

JANUARY 1916.

TEXT

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

NO. 1.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
TRENCHES	1		Battalion in trenches (New Year's Day)	15 <sup>th</sup> Battalion on left flank
	2		do do	
RED LODGE	3		Battalion relieved in trenches by 13 <sup>th</sup> Battalion, relief completed 6.30 p.m.	Law
	4		Unit moved into Brigade Reserve, Red Lodge.	Law
	5		Battalion in Brigade Reserve	Law
TRENCHES	6		do do	Law
	7		Battalion relieved 13 <sup>th</sup> Battalion in trenches 136 to 141 inclusive. Relief completed 7 p.m. Nos. 1 and 4 in front, No. 3 in support, No. 2 in reserve.	Law
	8		Battalion in trenches. 15 <sup>th</sup> Battalion on left flank	Law
	9		do do	Law
KORTEPYP	10		do do	Law
	11		Battalion relieved in trenches by 13 <sup>th</sup> Battalion, relief completed 6.45 p.m.	Law
	12		Unit moved into Divisional Reserve, Kortepyp.	
TRENCHES	13		Battalion in Divisional Reserve.	Law
	14		do do	Law
	15		do do	Law
			Battalion relieved 13 <sup>th</sup> Battalion in trenches 136 to 141 inclusive. Relief completed 7.15 p.m. Nos. 2 and 3 in front, No. 4 in support, No. 1 in reserve. 15 <sup>th</sup> Battalion on left flank.	Law

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

NO. 2.

WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
<u>TRENCHES</u>	16		Battalion in trenches	Law
	17		do do	Law
	18		do do	Law
<u>RED LODGE</u>	19		Battalion relieved in trenches by 13 <sup>th</sup> Battalion, relief completed 6.30 p.m. Unit moved into Brigade reserve, Red Lodge.	Law
	20		Battalion in Brigade Reserve	Law
	21		do do	Law
	22		do do	Law
<u>TRENCHES</u>	23		Battalion relieved 13 <sup>th</sup> Battalion in trenches 136 to 141 inclusive. Relief completed 6.45 p.m. Nos. 1 and 4 Co. in front, No. 2 in support, No. 3 in reserve. 15 <sup>th</sup> Battalion on left flank.	Law
	24		Battalion in trenches	Law
	25		do do	Law
	26		do do	Law
<u>KORTEPYP</u>	27		Battalion relieved in trenches by 13 <sup>th</sup> Battalion, relief completed 7.15 p.m. Unit moved into Divisional Reserve, Kortepyp.	Law
	28		Battalion in Divisional Reserve	Law
	29		do do	Law
	30		do do	Law
<u>METEREN</u>	31		Battalion relieved in Divisional Reserve by 5 <sup>th</sup> C.M.R. and unit moved into Corps Reserve, Meteren, arriving 4.30 p.m.	Law

J.W. Fisher Lt Col

CONFIDENTIAL  
WAR DIARY  
OF  
14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION  
FEBRUARY 1916.  
VOLUME 16 - 2.

WAR DIARY

14th Canadian Battalion 1st Cdn. Division,  
from 1st to 29th February, 1916.

Volume 12.

Diary Text

3 pages.

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR

DIARY

FEBRUARY

1916.

TEXT



Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

1  
**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY**

(Erase heading not required.)

FEBRUARY, 1916.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
METEREN	1		Physical drill and kit inspection.	
(CORPS	2		Baseball and football. Physical drill.	Law
RESERVE)	3		Physical drill, Company drill, lectures to h.c.o.s.	Law
	4		do do, Platoon drill, bathing parades.	Law
	5		do do, baseball, football, field sports.	Law
	6		do do, Church Parade, athletics.	Law
	7		do do, squad drill, musketry practice, platoon drill, signalling (visual) work, grenade attack practice.	Law
	8		do do, musketry, Company drill, grenadiers on route march, signallers on arm drill and visual signalling.	Law
	9		do do, Companies in assault with grenadiers, signallers on visual signalling, 50 men repairing trenches after assault, field sports in afternoon.	Law
	10		do do, musketry and smoke helmet drill, 200 men on repairing and improving trenches at grenade school, in afternoon, muster parade for Earl Kitchener's inspection.	Law
	11		do do, signallers on visual signalling, lecture to grenadiers on use of bombs in trenches, smoke helmet drill, lecture on "buzzer" to signallers, lectures to all ranks of Companies, lecture to grenadiers on catapults and best spring gun.	Law
	12		do do, Practice of formations for attack by Battalion, afternoon, athletics and road race.	Law

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

2

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

FEBRUARY, 1916.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
METEREN (CORPS RESERVE)	13		Physical drill, church parade, athletics.	Law
	14		do do, grenades at grenade school, part of unit inoculated, bathing parades.	Law
	15		do do, signalling lecture and "buzzer" practice, lecture to grenadiers on different phases of attack, platoon drill, smoke helmet drill, lectures to N.C.Os. grenadiers practising formations of attack, inoculation parade.	Law
	16		do do, inter-company bomb-throwing contests, Battalion in assault with grenadiers, 125 men on trench improvement work, inoculation proceeded with.	Law
	17		do do, Company drill with open order work, helmet inspection, visual signalling practice, football, 14 <sup>th</sup> vs. 16 <sup>th</sup> , 1 goal each.	Law
	18		do do, signalling lecture, grenadiers lecture, 4 NCOs. lecture.	Law
	19		do do, Battalion in assault, afternoon, - recreation.	Law
RED LODGE (BRIGADE RESERVE)	20		Battalion moved into Brigade reserve, relieving 5 <sup>th</sup> C.M.R. relief completed 5.15 p.m.	Law
TRENCHES	21		Battalion relieved 4 <sup>th</sup> C.M.R. in trenches 136 to 141, relief completed 8 p.m. No. 2, 3, Co. in front line, No. 1 in support, No. 4 in reserve. 15 <sup>th</sup> Battalion on our left flank.	Law
	22		Battalion in trenches.	Law
	23		do do	Law

# 14<sup>TH</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION

## WAR DIARY

72  
Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

3

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

FEBRUARY, 1916.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices	
TRENCHES	24		Battalion in trenches, No. 1, 4, Co. went into front line, No. 3 came back to support, No. 2 to reserve.	Law	
	25		Battalion in trenches - leave to England cancelled ( <u>Black Day</u> )	Law	
	26		do do	Law	
	RED LODGE (BRIGADE RESERVE)	27		do do - supports shelled by enemy, building set on fire. Relieved by 13 <sup>th</sup> Battalion, relief completed 8.05 pm. unit moved into Brigade reserve at Red Lodge.	Law
		28		Battalion in Brigade Reserve, no hostile artillery or aircraft in evidence, fatigue parties furnished for defensive works of 460 men.	Law
		29		Battalion in Brigade Reserve, no hostile artillery, several enemy aeroplanes noticed in this vicinity, fatigue parties of 465 men furnished.	Law

*W. H. B. Col*

CONFIDENTIAL  
WAR DIARY  
OF  
14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION  
MARCH 1916.  
VOLUME 16 - 3.

WAR DIARY

14th Canadian Battalion 1st Cdn. Division,

from 1st to 31st March, 1916.

Volume 13.

Diary Text

3 Pages.

Appendix A I

O.O. No. 57 3rd C.I.B. will relieve 149th Bde. on the 29th, 30th and 31st March, per attached relief table.

" A 2

O.O. No. 47 B dated the 29th March, 14th Bn. will relieve 7th Northumberland fusiliers on the 29th March

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION  
WAR DIARY  
MARCH 1916.  
TEXT.

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## (1) INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

MARCH, 1916.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
BRIGADE RESERVE, RED LODGE, PLUG-STREET WOODS	1		Battalions in Brigade Reserve, no enemy artillery or aircraft, British artillery very active, furnished working party of 170 at dusk.	Law
	2		British artillery active all day, working party of 450 furnished.	Law
	3		Quiet day, working party of 450 furnished.	Law
TRENCHES	4		Completed relief of 13 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Bttn. at 8 <sup>50</sup> p.m. trenches 136 to 141 inclusive. Nos. 2-3 Co. in front line, No. 4 in support, No. 1 in reserve. 112 O.R. of 58 <sup>th</sup> Canadian Bttn. in front line for purposes of tuition. Working party of 60. Quiet night.	Law
	5		Quiet day, working party of 139. Heavy fall of snow.	Law
	6		Quiet day, working party of 139. Snow flurries. 58 <sup>th</sup> Bttn. left trenches. Another night came in for interruption.	Law
	7		No activity on either side, heavy snow, working party of 9, others cancelled.	Law
	8		Great aeroplane activity on both sides, our reserve Co. shelled by howitzers, working party 171.	Law
	9		Quiet day, 58 <sup>th</sup> Bttn. left trenches, 30 of supports, 20 of reserves, went up into front line.	Law
DIVISIONAL RESERVE, KORTPEYP.	10		13 <sup>th</sup> Bttn. completed our relief at 8.30 p.m. Bttn. went to Divisional Reserve, Kortpeyp. Very quiet day in line.	Law
	11		Kit inspection, musketry, lectures, working party 200.	Law
	12		Physical drill, Church Service, rifle inspection, working party 200.	Law
	13		Physical drill, football, grenade practice, lecture, working party 100.	Law

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

(2.)

WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118

MARCH, 1916.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
DIVISIONAL RESERVE, KORT EPYP.	14		Physical drill, squad drill, lecture on grenades, machine gun targets practice.	Law
	15		Physical drill, football, grenade practice, band concert, lecture on guards.	Law
	16		Physical drills, rifle and S.A.A. inspection, inspection of unit by Brig. Gen. Tafford, G.O.C. 3 <sup>RD</sup> Can. Inf. Bde., - concert.	Law
TRENCHES	17		Completed relief of 13 <sup>th</sup> Bttn. in trenches 8:50 p.m., Nos. 1, 4 Co. front line, No. 2, supports, No. 3, reserves. 1 <sup>ST</sup> Can. Pioneer Bttn. 1/2 Co. with us for instruction.	Law
	18		Major R. P. Clark assumed command of unit. 8 unit day.	Law
	19		Unit day.	Law
	20		Unit day.	Law
	21		Unit day. 1 <sup>ST</sup> Can. Pioneer Bttn. left trenches, 1 Platoon of supports went up to front line.	Law
	22		Unit day.	Law
	23		Enemy shelled one of support positions, L & PLUS DOUCE FARM, heavily.	Law
	24		Relieved by 9 <sup>th</sup> Royal Sussex, relief completed 9 p.m.	Law
	25		Left Red Lodge 6:10 p.m. arrived rest area No. 2, Bailleur, 10:10 p.m.	Law
	26		In Rest Area billets.	Law
REST AREA	27		In Rest area billets. Inspection by G.O.C. 1 <sup>ST</sup> Div Can. C. Chd.	Law
	28		Left Rest area 9:30 a.m. arrived Canada Huts, near OUDERDOM, 2:30 p.m.	Law V.L.S. H/-1



## WAR DIARY

OR

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

MARCH, 1916.

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

(3.)

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
BRIGADE RESERVE SWAN CHATEAU	29		Completed relieve of 7 <sup>th</sup> Northumberland Trenchers in Brigade Reserve at 9.15 p.m. Location almost due south of YPRES and close to that City.	See app a/x CWS
	30		In Brigade Reserve, spasmodic artillery fire by both sides, very little aeroplane activity.	CWS
	31		In Brigade Reserve, working party of 200 furnished at night, parties of Officers and O.R. familiarized themselves with new line and surroundings.	CWS.
<p><i>R. P. Clark</i></p> <p>MAJOR, COMMANDING 14<sup>TH</sup> CANADIAN BTTN.</p>				

by

BRIGADIER GENERAL G.S. TUXFORD, C.M.G.  
Commanding 3rd Canadian Inf Bde.

COPY

C/1

Ref. 1/40000 map sheet 28.  
and trench map.

1. The 3rd Canadian Inf. Bde. will relieve the 149th Bde. on the nights 29/30, 30/31 March in the left sector- trenches 37 L to A 3 both incl.
2. The relief will be carried out according to the attached relief table.

3. Owing to lack of accommodation the 2 battalions in the front line will find their own supports for that line.  
The 14th Bn. will occupy the positions normally occupied by the Bn. in Bde. res. These positions are arranged in depth and the battalion will be prepared to send up reinforcements to the support line as required.

The 15th Bn. will remain in Bde. reserve at SCOTTISH LINES until April 1st when this battalion will move into DICKEBUSCH Huts (northern camp).

## 5. (a) Guides March 29/30.

The 4th and 5th N.F. will each provide two guides to meet the 16th Can. Bn. at CAFE BELGE (H. 29. b. 8. 5.) at 7 pm. to conduct the relieving coys. to TRANSPORT FARM where the following trench guides will be at 7.30 pm.

4th N.F. 1 Off. and 2 guides for X Trench.  
1 Off. and 2 guides for GLASGOW CROSS, trench 48 and sap 47.  
1 Off. and 2 guides for ARMAGH WOOD.

5th N.F. 1 Officer and 4 guides per coy.  
1 N.C.O. for Bn. H.Q.

The 7th N.F. will provide the following guides to meet the 14th Bn. at CAFE BELGE at 7.15 pm.

1 Officer (2 guides for SUNKEN ROAD.  
2 guides for BLAUWE POORT FARM.  
2 guides for WOODCOTE HOUSE.

1 Officer and 2 guides for CANAL DUGOUTS.  
1 Officer and 2 guides for SWAN CHATEAU.  
1 Officer and 2 guides for H. 30. a.

## (b) Guides March 30/31.

The 6th N.F. will provide one officer and 4 guides to meet the 13th Bn. at CAFE BELGE at 7 pm. to conduct the relieving coys. to TRANSPORT FARM where the following trench guides will be at 7.30 pm.

1 Off. and 4 guides per Coy.  
1 N.C.O. for Bn. H.Q.

The 4th N.F. will furnish guides at TRANSPORT FARM at 7.30 pm. as follows:-  
2 guides for LARCHWOOD DUGOUTS.  
2 guides for R. 7.

6. Advanced parties consisting of C.O. or 2nd in command, 1 Officer per coy Bn. M.G.O. Bn. Signalling Officer and Bn. Intelligence Officer, from the relieving bns. will be at Bde. H.Q. (Railway Dugouts) at 2 pm. on the day of relief, where they will be met by 2 guides from each Bn. to conduct them to Bn. Headquarters.

7. The relief of Machine guns will be carried out under arrangements made direct between the respective B.M.G.Os. Copy of the orders issued will be forwarded to the units concerned. Bn. M.Gs. will carry out their relief at the same time as their bns. The relief of Machine guns of the 149th Infantry Bde. by the machine gun section of the 3rd Can. Inf. Bde. will be carried out as follows:-

1 gun in trench A. 3.  
1 gun in trench A. 1.  
1 gun in trench 30.  
1 gun in Machine Gun Mansion.  
1 gun at GLASGOW CROSS.

Guides will be furnished, one for each of above positions, by the 149th Bde. and will meet the M.G. Section of the 16th Bn. at CAFE BELGE, at H. 29. b. 8. 5. at 7 pm. on March 29th/1916.

The Machine Gun Section of the 14th Bn. will relieve guns in following positions:-

VERBRANDEN MOLEN - one gun.  
R. 7. - one gun.

Guides for each of the above two positions will be furnished by the 149th Bde. and will meet the guns of the 14th Bn. at CAFE BELGE, at 7.15 pm. March 29th/1916.

Q 11

7. (contd) The Machine Gun section of the 13th Bn. will relieve the guns in the following positions:-

- One Gun in trench 37.
- one gun in trench 38.
- one gun in trench 39,
- one gun in trench 40.
- One gun in trench 41-S.

Guides for each of the above positions will be furnished by the 14th Bde. and will meet the guns of the 13th Bn. at CAFE BELGE - H.Q. b. G. S., at 7.00 pm. March 30th/1916. The Battalion in support will furnish each of the Battalions in the front line with one gun and equipment. Extra crews will be furnished to front line Battalions by the 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade Machine Gun Company, as required.

- 8. Signals will be relieved under arrangements made direct between Bde. Signalling Officers.
- 9. Transport of the 3rd Can. Inf. bde. will not pass LILLE GATE before 10.30 pm.
- 10. The Completion of all reliefs will be reported to Bde. H.Q. at RAILWAY DUGOUTS each evening and also to 3rd Can. Inf. Bde. H.Q. at OUDERDOM on the night of 29/30 March.
- 11. All trench stores, logbooks, defence schemes, orders, trench maps 1/20000, 1/10000, documents, photographs and information relating to the area will be taken over by the relieving bns.
- 12. The G.O.C. 3rd Can. Inf. Bde. will assume command of the Left sector on completion of the relief of the front line trenches on the night 30/31.
- 13. Reports to Bde. H. Q. OUDERDOM, up till 5 pm. March 30. After that hour to Bde. H. Q. RAILWAY DUGOUTS.
- 14. Acknowledge.

Issued at 7am.  
March 28th 1916.

- |                      |                      |                     |
|----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Copy No. 1. 13th Bn. | Copy No. 6. M.M.G.B. | Copy No. 10. Office |
| 2. 14th Bn.          | 7. B.M.G.O.          | 11. War Diary.      |
| 3. 15th Bn.          | 8. 1st Can. Div.     | 12. War Diary.      |
| 4. 16th Bn.          | 9. 1st Field Coy.    |                     |
| 5. 14th Inf. Bde.    |                      |                     |

## RELIEF TABLE.

Q/11

Date.	Unit. from.	time. to	Route.	Unit.	To.
29/30	16th DICKEBUSCH HUTS.	6 pm.	LEFT SECTION via CAFE BELGE (H.20.b.3.5) TRANSPORT FM. where guides will meet Bn.	4th N.F. in 47 48, GLASGOW CROSS, X trench sq. wood ARMAGH WOOD.	CANADA HUTS.
				Party of 5th N.F. DICKE in trenches 49 to A.3. both incl.	DICKE BUSCH HUTS.
	3 sec R.E.	H.21.b.5.5. dusk	MANOR HSE. Guides provided by R.E.	2 secs. and N Field company.	H.21.b. 5.5.
14th.	CANADA HUTS.	6.15 pm.	SUNKEN ROAD via CAFE BELGE BLAWPOORT FM. WOODCOTE HSE. SWAN CHATEAU. H.30.a. CANAL DUGOUTS. J.19.b.4.3.	7th N.F.	CANADA HUTS.
1st Can M. M.G.B.	POPERINGHE	1 am.	Arrangements made direct with 149th Bde.	M.M.G. Coy.	
30/31	13th DICKEBUSCH HUTS.	6 pm.	RIGHT SEC. 47 S (incl) to 37 L (incl)	As for 10th Bn.	6th N.F. DICKE-BUSCH HUTS.
43th			LARCHWOOD DUGOUTS. R.7.	Two coys. 4th N.F.	
15th	Remain in SCOTTISH LINES.				

Appendix A 1/1

by  
Major R. P. Clark.  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

*A/2*  
Field,  
March 29th 1916.

- Reference 1. The 14TH CANADIAN BATTALION will relieve the 7th NORTHUMBERLAND FUSILIERS on the night of March 29th 1916. THE 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will occupy the positions normally occupied by the Battalion in Brigade Reserve. These positions are arranged in depth and the Battalion will be prepared to send up reinforcements to the support line as required.
2. Battalion Headquarters, Companies and Details will occupy positions as follows:-  
Battalion Headquarters, Headquarters Details, Machine Gun Section (less two crews) at SWAN CHATEAU, I.19.c.3.7  
No.1 Company & Grenadiers at WOODCOTE HOUSE I.20.c.4.2.  
No.2 Company at SUNKEN ROAD, I.20.c.6.1.  
No.3 Company at BLAUWE POORT FARM, I.27.b.5.3.  
No.4 Company at H.30.a.(2.2)  
Intelligence Section and Scouts at CANAL DUGOUTS I.19d.4.9  
Machine Gun Section, 1 gun at VERBRANDEN MOLIN 1Gun at R7
3. Battalion will leave billets as follows:-  
6.15 pm. Intelligence Section and Scouts.  
6.20 pm. No. 2 Company.  
6.25 pm. No. 3 Company.  
6.30 pm. Two Crews of Machine Guns  
6.35 pm. No. 1 Company and Grenadiers.  
6.40 pm. No. 4 Company.  
6.45 pm. Headquarters and Headquarters Details, Machine Gun less two crews.  
Signallers and Stretcher Bearers will parade with the Companies to which they are attached for duty.
4. Guides from 7th NORTHUMBERLAND FUSILIERS will meet Battalion at CAFE BELGE H.20.b.8.5. at 7 pm, as follows:-  
2 Guides for SUNKEN ROAD  
1 Officer 2 Guides for BLAUWE POORT FARM.  
2 Guides for WOODCOTE HOUSE.  
1 Officer and 2 Guides for CANAL DUGOUTS.  
1 Officer and 2 Guides for SWAN CHATEAU.  
1 Officer and 2 Guides for H. 30. a.  
Guides from the 14th Brigade will meet two Machine Gun crews at CAFE BELGE at 7.15 pm.
5. Transport arrangements are to be as issued direct to Quartermaster.
6. Company Commanders will report to Battalion Headquarters by wire as soon as possible after they arrive in position, and send their disposition, number of officers and men, also what Stretcher Bearers and Signallers they have in their positions. Company Commanders must make arrangements to render this report as promptly as possible, in order that Brigade may be notified.
- W. D. Smith*  
Captain and Adjutant,  
14th Canadian Battalion.
- Issued at 2.15 pm by orderly.
- Copy NO. 1 to No.1 Coy.  
" " 2 to No.2 Coy.  
" " 3 to No.3 Coy.  
" " 4 to No.4 Coy.  
" " 5 to Quartermaster.  
" " 6 to Regt. S.M. & Details.  
" " 7 to Orderly Room.  
" " 8 to 3rd Can. Inf. Bde.  
" " 9 to Machine Gun.  
" " 10 to Intelligence & Grenadiers.  
" " 11 to War Diary.  
" " 12 to War Diary.

CONFIDENTIAL  
WAR DIARY  
OF

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

APRIL 1916.

WITH APPENDICES 1 & 2.

VOLUME 16 - 4.

WAR DIARY

14th Battalion 1st Canadian Division,

from 1st to 30th April, 1916.

Volume 14.

Diary Text

2 Pages.

Appendix I

O.O. No. 48 dated the 2nd April, 1916. 14th Bn. to relieve 13th Bn. in support trenches on the 3rd and 4th April.

"

O.O. No. <sup>49</sup>~~49~~ dated the 8th April, 3rd C.I.B. to be relieved by 2nd C.I.B. on the 7th, 8th and 9th April.

O.O. No. 50 dated the 14th April, 3rd C.I.B. will relieve 1st C.I.B. on the 15th, 16th and 17th April, 14th Battalion will ~~be~~ move into Bde. reserve on the 15th and 16th, relieving 1st Battalion.

O.O. No. 51 dated the 22nd April, 14th Bn. to relieve 13th Bn. on April 23rd and 24th.

"

2

Inter-Bn. reliefs to take place on April 23rd, 24th and 25th.

Syllabus of training from April 9th to 23rd.



14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR

DIARY

APRIL 1916.

TEXT.

14th CANADIAN BATTALION.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II,  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

PAGE 1.

WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

APRIL 1918.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices	
<u>BRIGADE SUPPORT IN YPRES SALIENT.</u>	1.		Battalion in Support position. Heavy Artillery duel. 170 All ranks working party furnished.	<i>EW</i>	
	2.		Battalion in Support Position, British light and Heavy Guns very active. Enemy quiet. 120 all ranks working party furnished.	<i>EW</i>	
	3.		Battalion in Support Position. Relieved 13th Canadian Battalion in trenches, completed 10.20 p.m. 2 O.R. wounded going in. Battalion Headquarters at "THE DUMP". Vide Operation Orders No. 48 attached.	<i>EW</i>	
	<u>TRENCHES.</u>	4.		Battalion in trenches. Headquarters shelled spasmodically. General Attitude of both sides, quiet. Working Party 190 furnished. 1 O.R. Killed, 1 O.R. wounded.	<i>EW</i>
		5.		Great rifle grenade activity on both sides, started by enemy, roads in our area heavily shelled. Working party 190 O.R. furnished. 4 O.R. Killed 9 O.R. wounded.	<i>EW</i>
		6.		Bombers bombarded enemy heavily with rifle grenades and bombs, Trench Mortar Battery assisting. Working Party 190 O.R. furnished. Lieut. F.R. Houston killed, Capt. T.R. MacKenzie wounded, 1 O.R. killed 11 O.R. wnd.	<i>EW</i>
		7.		Heavy Shelling on both sides. No other activity. Working Party 150 O.R. furnished. 10 O.R. wounded.	<i>EW</i>
		8.		Battalion Headquarters shelled by howitzers, Officers' Mess, Orderly Room, Orderlies Dug-out destroyed. Roads heavily shelled. 9 O.R. wounded. 10th Battalion completed our relief at 3 a.m. (9th). Vide Operation Orders No. 49 attached.	<i>EW</i>
		9.		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Syllabus of Training attached.	<i>EW</i>
<u>DIVISIONAL RESERVE CANADA HUTS.</u>	10.		" " " " " "	<i>EW</i>	
	11.		" " " " " "	<i>EW</i>	
	12.		" " " " " "	<i>EW</i>	
	13.		" " " " " "	<i>EW</i>	
	14.		" " " " " "	<i>EW</i>	
			HUTS Completed relief at 7.30 p.m. of 1st Can. Batt in Brigade Reserve. Operation Orders No. 50 attached.	<i>EW</i>	

See 00.50.  
base of 15th Sa  
Relief also 1st Bn  
of 15/11/26.

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II.  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

PAGE 2.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
<u>BRIGADE RESERVE.</u>	15.		Battalion in Brigade Reserve.	
"	16.		" " " " " "	
"	17.		" " " " " Working Party of 260 all ranks furnished.	
"	18.		Working Party of 264 all ranks furnished.	
"	19.		" " " 250 " " " "	
"	20.		" " " 260 " " " "	
"	21.		" " " 264 " " " 1 O.R. wounded.	
"	22.		" " " 295 " " " "	
"	23.		Bathing Parade of $\frac{1}{2}$ Battalion to POFERINGHE. Completed relief of 13th Canadian Battalion in trenches at 1 a.m. (24th) Vade Operation Orders No. 51 attached, also Brigade Operation Orders No. 61.	
<u>TRENCHES.</u>	24.		Battalion in firing line, very quiet day. Battalion Headquarters "THE BLUFF".	
"	25.		Battalion in firing line, very quiet day. Lieut. J. Howe killed by enemy sniper. 2 O.R. killed.	
"	26.		Battalion in firing line. Enemy exploded mine some distance to our left. Intense Artillery duel on both sides 5 p.m. to 9 p.m. 1 O.R. wounded.	
"	27.		Very quiet day, no activity on either side. 12 O.R. wounded, 1 O.R. killed.	
"	28.		Very Quiet day 6 O.R. wounded.	
"	29.		Spasmodic rifle grenade activity on both sides. 6 O.R. wounded.	
"	30.		Quiet day in general. Lieut. G.K. Ross killed by rifle grenade. 2 O.R. wounded.	
			<i>R.P. Clark</i> Lieut.-Colonel, Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion.	

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR

DIARY

APRIL

1916.

APPENDICES 1 & 2.



## APPENDIX I.

Copy No.....

OPERATION ORDERS NO. 48

SECRET.

b9  
Major R. P. Clark  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.  
-----

FIELD,  
April 2nd 1916.

Reference Sheet 28, 1/40000

Trench Map 1/10000

1. On the night April 3/4th the 14th BATTALION will relieve the 13th BATTALION in the front line and support trenches in the right sub-sector.
2. GUIDES. Trench parties should be made up before starting. The 13th BATTALION will arrange for 4 guides per company and 1 for Headquarters to meet the 14th Battalion at 7.30 p.m. at SUNKEN ROAD - BLAUWEPOORT FARM - WOODCOTE HOUSE - SWAN CHATEAU and H.30.a. These guides will conduct their respective parties as follows:-
  - From SUNKEN ROAD No. 2 Company to trenches Nos. 37L and 37s, 38, 38 control, 38s, and BENSAM ROAD.
  - From BLAUWEPOORT FARM No.3 Company to trenches 41, 41s, 47s.
  - From WOODCOTE HOUSE No.1 Company to LARCHWOOD DUGOUTS & R.7.
  - From SWAN CHATEAU to Battalion Headquarters.
  - From H.30.a. No. 4 Company to trenches 39, 39s, 40, 40 control and 40s.

For detailed distribution of garrison see attached table. The 14th Battalion will supply 12 guides for the 16th Battalion to conduct companies to the positions in Brigade Reserve; guides to await the 16th Battalion at the HALT, Q.22.c.6.4. at 9 p.m. and conduct each party direct to its position in support. These guides will be found by No.1 Company.
3. M.Gs. and equipment will remain in position. When the Brigade goes out of the line, guns and equipment will be handed back to their own Battalions,
4. Battalion Grenadiers of the 14th BATTALION with the necessary number of Company Bombers for Bombing posts will take over positions in the sectors before 4 p.m. The Brigade Grenade Officer will furnish Battalions with detail showing the number of posts and number of bombers required in each sector.
 

Guides from the 13th BATTALION will meet at BLAUWEPOORT Farm at 3.15 p.m. to convey Grenadiers of the 14th BATTALION to the right subsector.
5. Scouts and Snipers will be attached to No.2 Company for this tour of duty.
6. All movement by day to be restricted to parties of not more than 8 men and these should move at intervals of at least 100 yards.
7. Transport of relieving units will not pass the LILLE GATE before 10.30 p.m.
 

The Transport of the Relieved units will pass the LILLE GATE at 8.30 p.m. returning by the MENIN ROAD. No traffic past SHRAPNEL CORNER before 8.30 p.m.
8. Programmes of work in hand, Defence Schemes, will be handed over together with all trench maps and tracings.

OPERATION ORDER NO. 48 (cont'd)

9. Trench Stores will be handed over and receipts made out in triplicate.
10. Company Commanders will report to Battalion Headquarters by wire as soon as possible after they arrive in trench. They will send their disposition, number of Officers and men, also what Stretcher Bearers, Signallers, Machine Gunners and Grenadiers they have in their section of trench. Company Commanders must make arrangements to render this report as promptly and as accurately as possible in order that Brigade may be notified.

(sd) E. A. WHITEHEAD,  
 Captain and Adjutant,  
 14th Canadian Battalion.

Issued at 11.15 p.m. by Orderly

Copy No. 1 to No. 1 Company

"	"	2	"	"	2	"
"	"	3	"	"	3	"
"	"	4	"	"	4	"
"	"	5	"	Quartermaster.		
"	"	6	"	R.S.M. and Details.		
"	"	7	"	Orderly Room		
"	"	8	"	13th Can. Batt.		
"	"	9	"	3rd Can. Inf. Bde.		

by  
Major R. P. Clark.  
Commanding 14th. Canadian Battalion  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

Field, April 8th. 1916.

Reference Sheet 28, 1/40000.  
Trench Map 1/10000.

1. The 3rd. CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE will be relieved by the 2nd. CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE in the left section (trenches 51 to 58 inclusive) on the nights of 7/8th. and 8/9th. April and will go into Divisional Reserve.
2. The 14th. CANADIAN BATTALION will be relieved on the night of 8/9th. April by the 10th. CANADIAN BATTALION and will march to CANADA HUTS. H. 52. a. 5. 5. guide will meet each platoon at CANADA ESTAMINET adjoining CANADA HUTS.
3. The machine guns of the 14th. BATTALION will be relieved on the night of 8/9th. by the machine guns of the 10th. BATTALION. The 14th. BATTALION will furnish a guide for each of their five positions to be at TRANSPORT FARM at 7.30 p.m., April 8th. The 14th. Battalion will also furnish a guide to be at CAPE BELGE at 7 p.m., to conduct the machine gun section of the 10th. BATTALION to TRANSPORT FARM.
4. 14th. BATTALION will arrange guides to meet the relieving Battalion as follows:-  
April 8/9th. 1 Officer and 4 Company guides to meet the 10th. BATTALION at the H. E. DUMP. H. 24. a. 9. 8 at 9 p.m., to conduct the relieving companies to TRANSPORT FARM, where the following trench guides will be at 9.30 p.m.:-  
1 Officer and 4 guides per each Company in front line.  
1 N.C.O. for BATTALION HEADQUARTERS  
2 guides for LARCHWOOD DUGOUTS AND  
2 guides for R. 7. from No. 4 Company.
5. Advance parties from relieving unit will be at BRIGADE HEADQUARTERS, RAILWAY DUGOUTS at 2.30 p.m., on the day of relief. Each Company will send 2 guides to meet and conduct them to BATTALION HEADQUARTERS in parties not to exceed 4 persons.
6. All trench stores, logbooks, defence schemes, local orders, maps, photographs, and information relating to the area, will be handed over to relieving unit.
7. The following Billeting party will be detailed:-  
Battalion Headquarters 1 O.R.  
No. 1. Company. 4 O.R.  
No. 2. " 4 O.R.  
No. 3. " 4 O.R.  
No. 4. " 4 O.R.  
Details, each 1 O.R.  
They will report to QUARTERMASTER at CANADA HUTS at 2 p.m., April 8th. They will meet their respective platoons at CANADA ESTAMINET (see para. 2) at 10 p.m., April 8th.



8. Trenches and localities must be left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition and certificates obtained to this effect from relieving Company and Detail Commanders. Receipts must be obtained for all trench stores.
9. Upon completion of their relief Company and Detail Commanders will report to BATTALION HEADQUARTERS by telephone to receive orders to move out.
10. The G.O.C. 3rd. CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE will retain command of the left section until completion of the relief on the night of April 8/9th.
11. Acknowledge receipt.

(SGD) Gault McCombe, Major.  
for Lieut. and Acting Adjutant.  
14th. Canadian Battalion.

Issued at 2.p.m., by Orderly.

Copy No. 1. to No.1.Coy.  
" " 2. " " 2. "  
" " 3. " " 3. "  
" " 4. " " 4. "  
" " 5. " Regtl. S.M.  
" " 6. " 3rd.Can.Inf.Bde.  
" " 7. " Machine Gun.  
" " 8. " Quartermaster.  
" " 9. " War Diary.  
" " 10. " " "  
" " 11. " Orderly Room.

by  
Major R. P. Clark  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

Field,  
April 8th 1916.

Reference sheet 2B, 1/40000  
Trench Map 1/10000

- The 3rd CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE will be relieved by the 2nd CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE in the left section (trenches 51 to 38 inclusive) on the nights of 7/8th and 8/9th April, and will go into Divisional Reserve.
- The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will be relieved on the night of 8/9th April by the 10th CANADIAN BATTALION and will march to CANADA HUTS, H.32, 3, 5, 6, 7. Guide will meet each platoon at CANADA ESTAMINET ~~along~~ CANADA HUTS.
- The machines of the 14th BATTALION will be relieved on the night of 8/9th by the machine guns of the 10th BATTALION. The 14th BATTALION will furnish a guide for each of their five positions to be at TRANSPORT FARM at 7.30 p.m. April 8th. The 14th BATTALION will also furnish a guide to be at CAPE BELGE at 7 p.m. to conduct the machine gun section of the 10th BATTALION to TRANSPORT FARM.
- 14th BATTALION will arrange guides to meet the relieving battalion as follows:-  
April 8/9th. 1 Officer and 4 Company guides to meet the 10th BATTALION at the R.E. DUMP, H.24, 2, 9, 8, at 9 p.m. to conduct the relieving companies to TRANSPORT FARM, where the following trench guides will be at 9.30 p.m.:-  
1 Officer and 4 guides per each Company in front line.  
1 N.C.O. for BATTALION HEADQUARTERS.  
2 guides for BARRIAD DARGUES AND  
2 guides for R.2 from No. 4 Company.
- Advance parties from relieving unit will be at BRIGADE HEADQUARTERS, RAILWAY DARGUES at 2.30 p.m. on the day of relief. Each Company will send 2 guides to meet and conduct them to BATTALION HEADQUARTERS in parties not to exceed 4 persons.
- All trench stores, logbooks, defence schemes, local orders, maps, photographs, and information relating to the area, will be handed over to relieving unit.
- The following Billeting party will be detailed:-  
Battalion Head quarters 1 O.R.  
No. 1 Company 4 O.R.  
No. 2 Company 4 O.R.  
No. 3 Company 4 O.R.  
No. 4 Company 4 O.R.  
Details, each 1 O.R.  
They will report to QUARTERMASTER at CANADA HUTS at 2 p.m. April 8th. They will meet their respective platoons at CANADA ESTAMINET (see para. 2) at 10 p.m. April 8th.
- Trenches and localities must be left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition and certificates obtained to this effect from relieving Company and Detail Commanders. Receipts must be obtained for all trench stores.

35  
OPERATION ORDER NO 49 (contd.)

9. *After* completion of their relief Company and Detail Commanders will report to BATTALION HEADQUARTERS by telephone to receive orders to move out.
10. The G.O.C. 3rd CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE will retain command of the left section until completion of the relief on the night of April 8/9th.
11. Acknowledge receipt.

*Gaul McCombe Major*  
for Lieut. and Acting Adjutant,  
14th Canadian Battalion.

Issued *27/4* by Orderly.  
Copy No. 1 to No. 1 Coy.  
" " 2 to No. 2 Coy.  
" " 3 to No. 3 Coy.  
" " 4 to No. 4 Coy.  
" " 5 to Regtl. S.M.  
" " 6 to 3rd Can. Inf. Bde.  
" " 7 to Machine Gun.  
" " 8 to Quartermaster.  
" " 9 to War Diary.  
" " 10 to War Diary.  
" " 1 to Orderly Room.

by  
 Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

Field,  
 April 14th 1916.

Reference Map  
 Sheet 28 1  
 40000

1. The 3RD CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE will relieve the 1st CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE in the right section of the line from O.5.a.5.8. Canal (inclusive) to I.29.c.5.0. Trench 37 (inclusive) on the nights of April 15th/16th and 16th/17th.
2. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will move into Brigade Reserve at DICKEBUSCH HUTS (N) on the night of April 15/16 relieving the 1st CANADIAN BATTALION.
3. Companies and Details will parade at their billets at 7.30 p.m. sharp and proceed independently to DICKEBUSCH HUTS (N) via cross roads G.30.b.1.9., H.19.b.3.6., and H.26.a.2.8.
4. The following billeting party will be detailed:-  
 Each Company - 1 Officer and 1 O.R. from each platoon  
 Details - Sergeant THOMAS.  
 Billeting Party will report to Captain J.F. SUMPTION billeting Officer, at Orderly Room, CANADA HUTS at 4.45 p.m. sharp.
5. The Intelligence Section will detail one guide per Company and one guide for Machine Gun Battery to report to the Commanders of these units at their present billets at 7.00 p.m. to conduct them to DICKEBUSCH HUTS (N).
6. The billeting party will meet their respective Platoons in the vicinity of DICKEBUSCH HUTS (N) and guide them to their billets.
7. Company and Detail Commanders must take steps to ensure that their present billets and localities are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.

(sd) C.B. Price

Lieutenant and Acting Adjutant,  
 14th Canadian Battalion.

Issued at 8.30 p.m. by Orderly  
 Copy No. 1 to No. 1 Coy.  
 " " 2 " " 2 "  
 " " 3 " " 3 "  
 " " 4 " " 4 "  
 " " 5 " R.S.M.  
 " " 6 " 3rd Brigade.  
 " " 7 " Q.M.  
 " " 8 " Orderly Room  
 " " 9 " War Diary  
 " " 10 " " "

Copy No.....

OPERATION ORDERS NO. 52.

SECRET.

by

Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark,  
14th Canadian Battalion,

Commanding

TO :  
FROM :  
SUBJECT :  
DATE :  
TIME :  
PLACE :  
CLASSIFICATION :  
AUTHORITY :  
REFERENCES :  
REMARKS :

-----  
Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark  
14th Canadian Battalion  
-----

7

by  
Lieut.-Col. R. P. Clark  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion  
Royal Montreal Regiment.  
-----

Field,  
April 22nd 1916.

Reference Map  
Sheet 28, 1/40000.

Relief.

1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will relieve the 13th CANADIAN BATTALION in the trenches, right sub-sector on the night of April 23/24.

Reliefs.

2. Reliefs will be carried out in accordance with the attached table.  
Bombers and Machine Gunners will leave under their own arrangements. All parties must observe the strict regulation of moving by day in parties of not more than three men.

Advance Parties.

3. Company Commanders, Orderly Room Sergeant and one N.C.O. per company will leave DICKEBUSCH CAMP at 2.30 p.m. April 23rd.  
One N.C.O. per platoon and two men for BATTALION HEADQUARTERS will leave Camp at 6.30 p.m.

Guides.

4. One Guide from the 13th BATTALION for each platoon will meet companies as follows:-  
No.3 Company. Guides at BLAUWEPPOORT FARM at 8.30 pm  
Nos.1, 2, & 4 Companies. Guides at WOODCOTE HOUSE at 8.30 p.m.

Transport.

5. Transport of the 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will not pass SHRAPNEL CORNER before 10 p.m.

Valises.

6. Companies and Details will make their own arrangements with the Quartermaster to leave all packs at the Transport Lines.

Disposition.

7. Company Commanders will report to Battalion Headquarters by wire as soon as possible after they arrive in trench. They will send their disposition, number of Officers and men, also what Stretcher Bearers, Signallers, Machine Gunners and Bombers they have in their section of trench. Company Commanders must make arrangements to render this report as promptly and as accurately as possible, in order that Brigade may be notified.

8. Acknowledge.

*Cal Whitbread*

Captain and Adjutant,  
14th Canadian Battalion.

- |            |                             |
|------------|-----------------------------|
| Issued at  | by Orderly.                 |
| Copy No. 1 | to No. 1 Coy.               |
| " " 2      | to No. 2 Coy.               |
| " " 3      | to No. 3 Coy.               |
| " " 4      | to No. 4 Coy.               |
| " " 5      | to Quartermaster.           |
| " " 6      | to Regt. S.M. and Details.  |
| " " 7      | to Orderly Room.            |
| " " 8      | to 13th Canadian Battalion. |
| " " 9      | to 3rd Can. Inf. Bde.       |
| " " 10     | to War Diary.               |
| " " 11     | to War Diary.               |



38  
RELIEF TABLE ISSUED WITH 14th BATTALION OPERATION ORDERS NO. 51.

<u>UNIT.</u>	<u>TIME.</u>	<u>ROUTE.</u>	<u>DESTINATION.</u>
No. 3 Coy.	7.00 p.m.	via Tramway and Lovers Lane.	Trenches 32, 32s, 32r, 33, 33s, 33r as far as Lovers Lane exclusive.
Battalion Headquarters.	7.15 p.m.		Battalion Headquarters Right Sub-sector.
No. 2 Coy.	7.20 p.m.	Bedford House and Hedge Row.	Pollock, Bean, 31a, 31r, 31s,
No. 1 Coy.	7.40 p.m.	Bedford House and Pear Tree Walk.	Trenches 29, 30, 30s, 30r.
No. 4 Coy.	8.00 p.m.	Bedford House and Gordon Post.	New Year's Trench and Supports.

Heads of Companies will pass starting point (Quartermaster's Stores) at the times specified. Companies will move off by platoons at five minute intervals.



39  
COPY.

APPENDIX 2  
Operational Order No. 61.

Secret

by  
Brigadier General G.S. TUXFORD C.M.G.,  
Cmdg. 3rd Canadian Inf. Bde..  
..... 22nd April 1916.

- Relief. 1. Inter-Battalion reliefs will take place on the nights April 23/24th and 24/25th.  
2. Reliefs will be carried out in accordance with the attached relief table.
- Guides. 3. All arrangements for guides will be made direct between Os.C. Battalions concerned.
- Bombers. 4. The Bde. Bombing Officer will arrange that battalion bombers are in position and know their ground before the relieving infantry enter the trenches.
- Machine-Guns. 5. The Bde.M.G.O. will arrange for the relief of Machine-guns in the front line in conjunction with the Bn.M.G.O's.
- Transport. 6. The transport of relieving battalions will not pass SHRAPNEL CORNER before 10 p.m.
- Guards. 7. Os.C. Battalions will arrange that all guards, control posts, battle stops, are relieved in sufficient time to allow such parties to move off with their units.
- Maps. 8. On relief all battalions will hand over all maps, schemes of defence, log-books, plans, maps etc. relating to their sector.
9. Advance parties and parties of officers and n.c.o's. visiting the lines must NOT move in larger parties than 3 at a time, and then only at intervals of over 100 yards. The approaches to the right sector are in full view of the enemy lines, and any movement in that area at once produces heavy shelling in the vicinity of LANGHOF CHATEAU and GORDON TERRACE.
10. Completion of reliefs to be reported to Bde.H.Q; also the time of arrival of the relieved unit in its new location.
11. Acknowledge.

Issued at 7.30 a.m. 22nd April.

(sd) J.N.O. Clarke,  
Major,  
Bde. Major,  
3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade.

Copy No. 1, 13th Bn.  
" " 2, 14th Bn.  
" " 3, 15th Bn.  
" " 4, 16th Bn.  
" " 5, Bde.M.G.O.  
" " 6, " Grenade Officer.  
" " 7, 1st C.M.M.G. Coy.  
" " 8, 1st Can. Div.  
" " 9, 1st Can. Inf. Bde.  
" " 10, " " "  
" " 11, Office.  
" " 12, War Diary.  
" " 13, " "

40  
Relief Table issued with 3rd Can. Inf. Bde. O.O.61.

<u>Date</u>	<u>Unit</u>	<u>Location</u>	<u>Relieving</u>	<u>Location</u>	<u>Destination.</u>
April 23/24	14th Bn.	Bde.reserve Dickebusch Huts.	13th Bn.	Right sub- sector.	Bde Reserve Dickebusch Huts
" 24/25	15th Bn.	Bde.support Bedford House H.23.a, 7.5. H.29.a,	16th Bn.	Left sub- sector.	Bde.support.

41

SYLLABUS OF TRAINING

carried out by  
14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.  
April 9th - 23rd 1916.  
-----

No. 1 Company.

- April 10th - 15th. Physical Drill daily, 7.00 - 7.30 a.m.  
" 10th. Bathing Parade to POPERINGHE. Shell Alarm practice.  
" 11th. Kit inspection, Lecture to N.C.Os. and men on  
explanation of Map of YPRES district.  
" 12th. Squad, Platoon and Arm drill.  
" 13th. Musketry practice, Lecture to N.C.Os. on details  
of discipline.  
" 15th. Range Practice.  
" 16th. Shell Alarm Practice.  
" 20th. Bombing Platoon carried out training under  
Company Bombers.

Rifle and Ammunition inspection daily.  
-----

No. 2 Company.

- April 10th - 15th. Physical Drill daily 7.00 to 7.30 a.m.  
" 10th. Bathing Parade to POPERINGHE. Shell Alarm practice.  
" 11th. Kit inspection, Lecture to Company on our position.  
" 12th. Squad and Platoon Drill.  
" 13th. Musketry, Squad and Platoon drill.  
Dummy charge practice rapid loading.  
" 14th. Company drill, Bayonet fighting.  
Lecture to N.C.Os. on discipline.  
" 16th. Shell Alarm practice.  
" 20th. Bombing platoon carried out training under  
Battalion Bombers.  
" 15th. Range Practice.

Rifle and Ammunition Inspection and Gas Helmet  
Inspection daily.  
-----

No. 3 Company.

- April 10th. - 15th. Physical drill daily 7.00 to 7.30 a.m.  
" 10th. Bathing Parade to POPERINGHE. Shell Alarm practice.  
" 11th. Kit inspection.  
" 14th. Route march to POPERINGHE.  
" 15th. Range practice.  
" 16th. Shell Alarm practice.  
" 20th. Bombing platoon carried out training under  
Battalion Bombers.  
" 21st. Range practice with Gas Helmets.  
Bathing parade to POPERINGHE

Rifle and Ammunition inspection daily.  
-----

No. 4 Company.

- April 9th - 15th, Physical drill daily 7.00 to 7.30 a.m.  
" 2th - Lecture to Company on Discipline.  
" 10th Lecture to Company on care of arms, cleaning  
ammunition etc. Bathing parade to POPERINGHE.  
" 13th Route March to POPERINGHE.  
" 14th 40 men practice on ranges.  
" 15th Lecture to N.C.Os.  
" 17th 60 men practice on ranges.  
" 18th Shell Alarm practice.  
" 19th Bombing platoon carried out training under  
Battalion Bombers.

Rifle and Ammunition inspection daily

42  
SYLLABUS OF TRAINING (cont'd)

Machine Gun Battery.

	<u>Morning.</u>	<u>Afternoon.</u>
April 10th.		Bathing.
" 11th.	Squad Drill.	Working on Camp.
" 12th.	Work on Camp.	Squad Drill.
" 13th.	Packing and Overhauling Limbers.	
" 14th.	Mechanism and Belt Filling.	
" 15th.	Mechanism and Packing Limbers.	Musketry (Range).
" 16th.	Belt Filling and Mechanism.	Gun Drill etc. (Range)
" 17th.	Lecture by Sergeant LENNAN.	
" 18th.	Firing.	Gun Drill.
" 19th.	Gun Drill.	Belt Filling.
" 20th.	Gun Drill.	Locating Stoppages.
" 21st.	Mechanism, musketry and Firing M.G. with Smoke Helmets.	Bathing Parade.
" 22nd.	Belt Filling.	Mechanism.

-----  
Snipers.

Training in emplacement construction and concealment as laid down by Snipers School carried on. From 17th to 23rd when ranges were available constant practice was had both with and without telescopic sights. Two men attended course at Snipers School 15th to 21st.

Observers and Scouts.

Instruction given in map reading and sketching, use of prismatic compass and telescopes. All routes and short-cuts in Divisional area were gone over and reported on. Eight men at the rate of two per day went over routes and trenches in right sector beyond canal and north of it.

Scouts had revolver practice on ranges and both Scouts and Observers had frequent rifle practice.

The whole Section given physical drill for short period in morning when weather permitted.

-----  
Battalion Bombers.

Besides training the Bombing platoon of each Company Battalion Bombers carried out practice in throwing hand grenades and firing rifle grenades.

-----  
Signal Section.

Operators, 4 hours Buzzer practice daily. Rifle inspection daily. Linemen picked up  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile D3 and  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile D5 and replaced G1 wire to Brigade with same.  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour lecture daily on Message Form, Counting words etc.  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour practice daily with Signalling Disc. Musketry as per Battalion Orders. Physical Training when weather was favourable.

SYLLABUS OF TRAINING (cont'd).Officers.

- |       |       |  |
|-------|-------|--|
| April | 10th. | Lecture to Officers by Brigade Grenade Officer.  |
| "     | 16th. | Machine Gun Demonstration to all Officers, every Officer firing several rounds.        |
| "     | 17th. | Revolver practice for all Officers on Ranges.  |
| "     |       | Lecture by Machine Gun Officer.  |
| "     | 18th. | Course for all Officers in throwing live Grenades and Firing Rifle Grenades.           |
| "     | 21st. | Lecture to Officers and N. C. Os. by A.D.M.S. on Sanitation and Prevention of Disease. |
| "     | 22nd. | Lecture to Officers by Medical Officer on First Aid.                                   |

All Officers and nearly all N.C.Os. visited new trench area, Officers turning in sketches to Memory of this area.

It was difficult to carry out much work during the tour in Divisional Reserve April 9th to 15th as Battalion was moving huts to Dominion Lines and weather was very bad.

CONFIDENTIAL  
WAR DIARY  
OF  
14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION  
MAY 1916.  
WITH APPENDICES # 1 to 4.  
VOLUME 16 - 5.

WAR DIARY

14th Canadian Battalion 1st Cdn. Division,

from 1st to 31st May, 1916.

Volume 15.

Diary Text

8 Pages.

Appendix I

O.O. No. 53 dated the 9th May, 14th Bn. will  
relieve 1st Battalion on the 9th and 10th May.

" 2

O.O. No. 54 dated the 17th May, 14th Bn. will  
relieve 13th Bn. on 17th and 18th May in left  
sub-sector.

" 3

O.O. No. 55 dated the 24th May, 14th Bn. to be  
relieved by 7th Bn. in left sub-section on the  
26th and 27th May.

" 4

Syllabus of training from May 4th to 10th.

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR

DIARY

MAY

1916.

TEXT.



Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Page 1.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

May 1916.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
TRENCHES	1st.		7th Canadian Battalion relieved 14th Canadian Battalion in the right Sub-Sector (THE BLUFF). Battalion went to HOP FACTORY, POPERINGHE. Desultory Shelling, weather fine. 3 O.R. Killed, 10 O.R. Wounded, 2 O.R. Died of Wounds.	JWB
DIVISIONAL RESERVE	2nd		Battalion Resting. Kit Inspection in the afternoon. Battalion in Divisional Reserve.	JWB
	3rd		Battalion in Divisional Reserve and moved from the HOP FACTORY to the RUE DE BOESCHERPE.	JWB
	4th		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Muster Parade. Bathing Parade. Working Party, 500 O.R. and 6 Officers.	JWB
	5th		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Inspection by the G.O.C. 1st Canadian Division	JWB
	6th		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Musketry Drill and Bayonet Fighting by Companies in the morning. Weather Conditions excellent.	JWB
	7th		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Battalion Church Parade.	JWB
	8th		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Draft of 80 O.R. received. Captain F. W. Utton takes over Adjutancy of the Battalion on transfer from the 15th Canadian Battalion. Field Day - Lieut.-General Sir Edwin Alderson K.C.B., in attendance.	JWB
	9th		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. 14th Battalion relieved the 1st Canadian Battalion in Brigade Support (headquarters at SWAN CHATEAU). Relief complete at midnight May 9/10th. Vide Operation Orders No. 53 attached.	JWB
BRIGADE SUPPORT.	10th		Battalion in Brigade Support. Working Party of 4 Officers and 350 O.R. furnished. Weather uncertain.	JWB
	11th		Battalion in Brigade Support. Working Party of 4 Officers and 390 O.R. furnished. 1 O.R. Killed and 2 O.R. Wounded.	JWB
	12th		Battalion in Brigade Support. Working Party of 5 Officers and 400 O.R. furnished. 1 O.R. Killed. A few High Explosive shells in the vicinity of Headquarters.	JWB
	13th		Battalion in Brigade Support. Working Party of 405 O.R. and 4 Officers furnished. Weather still cloudy and showery.	JWB
	14th		Battalion in Brigade Support. Draft of 89 O.R. received. Working Party of 400 O.R. and 5 Officers furnished.	JWB

WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
BRIGADE SUPPORT	15th		Battalion in Brigade Support. Working Party of 5 Officers and 410 O.R. furnished. 1 O.R. Wounded. Very quiet day.	
	16th		Battalion in Brigade Support. Working Party of 5 Officers. and 360 O.R. furnished. 2 O.R. Wounded.	JML
TRENCHES	17th		Battalion in Brigade Support. 14th Canadian Battalion relieved 13th Canadian Battalion in the left-sub-sector, (Trenches 46 -51, Mount. Sorrel Defences) 1 O.R. Killed 3 O.R. Wounded.	JML
	18th		Battalion in Trenches. Attitude of enemy quiet. Wind Mild N.W. Working Party of 3 Officers and 150 O.R. furnished. 3 O.R. wounded.	JML
	19th		Battalion in trenches.- Enemy Artillery quiet, enemy snipers and Machine Guns active. Working Party of 2 Officers and 175 O.R. furnished. 3 O.R. Wounded, 1 O.R. died of wounds. Wind N.E.	JML
	20th		Battalion in trenches. Gas Alert On. Situation normal during the day, very quiet at night with the exception of enemy Machine Guns, which swept all roads in the vicinity of our trenches continuously. Believed that enemy relief took place. Wind S.E. changing to N.N.W. and very mild. Working Party of 2 Officers and 270 O.R. furnished. 1 O.R. Killed and 3 O.R. wounded.	JML
	21st		Battalion in trenches. Enemy light guns and trench mortars kept up desultory fire throughout the day. Wind, light S.E. Working Party of 2 Officers and 180 O.R.. 1 O.R. Killed and 4 O.R. Wounded.	JML
	22nd		Battalion in trenches. Headquarters (UPPINGHAM) shelled spasmodically with Whizz Bang Shrapnel. Shells mostly burst in the air directly over the Orderly Room. Fine morning, showery 3 p.m. to dusk. Wind W. varying to N.W. 18 reinforcements received. Working Party 3 Officers 238 O.R. furnished. 5 O.R. wounded, 1 O.R. died of wounds.	JML
	23rd		Battalion in trenches. Hostile Artillery very active on front line and support trenches, Battalion Headquarters, ARMAGH Wood, and Observatory Ridge; parapet of trenches breached in several places. Wind N.N.W. Mild. Reinforcements 19 O.R. received. Working Party of 3 Officers and 169 O.R. furnished. 2 O.R. Killed 6 O.R. wounded.	JML
	24th		Battalion in trenches. Situation very quiet. Hostile Snipers and Machine guns far less active than usual. Wind E.S.E. very light and variable Working Party of 2 Officers and 150 O.R. furnished. 2 O.R. wounded.	JML

# WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## or INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

*Page 3.*

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
TRENCHES	25 <sup>th</sup>		Battalion in trenches. Practically no sniping or machine gun fire and quiet in every respect from midnight 24/30th May to 1 p.m. 25th. 1 p.m. to 2.30 p.m. Battalion headquarters snailed with 5.0 High Explosives Medical Officer's Dug-out and Dressing Station blown in. Wind was mild and variable. 14th Canadian Battalion relieved by 7th Canadian Battalion. 4 O.R. Wounded. 14th Battalion went to DOMINION LINES G.23b.5.5.	<i>MB</i>
DIVISIONAL RESERVE	26 <sup>th</sup>		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Battalion resting in the morning, Afternoon devoted to Kit Inspection and re-equipment. 1 O.R. Died of wounds.	<i>MB</i>
	27 <sup>th</sup>		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Muster Parade held.	<i>MB</i>
	28 <sup>th</sup>		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. One half Battalion Musketry, remainder Bayonet Fighting. Working Party of 2 Officers and 250 O.R. 1 O.R. wounded, 1 O.R. died of wounds.	<i>MB</i>
	29 <sup>th</sup>		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Lectures on Lewis Machine Gun and Bombing. Very fine day.	<i>MB</i>
	30 <sup>th</sup>		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Bathing Parade of Battalion. Very dull and close day.	<i>MB</i>
	31 <sup>st</sup>		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Fine day. Company, section and platoon drill.	<i>MB</i>
			<p><i>R.P. Clark</i></p> <p>Lieut.-Colonel, Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion.</p>	

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR

DIARY

MAY

1916.

WITH APPENDICES 1 to 4.



Copy No. 11. 1 APPENDIX I

OPERATION ORDERS NO. 53.

SECRET.

by  
Lieut Colonel R. P. Clark  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

Field,  
May 9th 1916.

Reference Map  
Sheet 28, 1/40000.

Relief.

1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will relieve the 1st CANADIAN BATTALION on the night of May 9/10th in Brigade Support Positions.

Positions.

2. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will occupy positions as follows:-

Battalion Headquarters, Signallers, 2 Pioneers, at SWAN CHATEAU.

No. 1 Company, 1 Platoon of No. 2 Company and Stretcher Bearers at WOODCOTE HOUSE.

No. 2 Company less 1 platoon at H.30.a.

No. 3 Company less 1 platoon at BLAUWEPFORT FARM

No. 4 Company, and 1 platoon of No. 3 Company at SUNKEN ROAD.

Battalion Bombers, Scouts, Machine Gun personnel and Pioneers at CANAL DUG-OUTS.

Departure.

3. Battalion will leave Billets at time to be notified later and proceed by train to either H.12.a, 2.O. or VLAMERTINGHE.

Details.

4. Signallers and Stretcher Bearers will parade with the Companies to which they are attached for duty

Advance Party.

5. Each Company will send in advance one Officer to take over Stores, etc., in daylight. Lieut. F. OWEN to represent Details. These Officers will make arrangements with the Quartermaster for horses and must start not later than 3 p.m.

Transport.

6. Transport arrangements will be as per appendix attached to these Orders.

Kits.

7. Men will take entire kits into BRIGADE SUPPORT.

Disposition.

8. Company and Detail Commanders will report to Battalion Headquarters by wire as soon as possible after they arrive in their positions. They will send their disposition, number of Officers and men, also what Stretcher Bearers and Signallers they have in their positions. Company and Detail Commanders must make arrangements to render this report as promptly and as accurately as possible, in order that Brigade may be notified.

9. Acknowledge.

*R. P. Clark*  
Captain and Adjutant,  
14th Canadian Battalion.

OPERATION ORDERS NO. 53.

Issued at *12 noon* by Orderly .

Copy No. 1 to No. 1 Coy.  
" " 2 to " 2 "  
" " 3 to " 3 "  
" " 4 to " 4 "  
" " 5 to Quartermaster.  
" " 6 to Regtl, S.M. and Details.  
" " 7 to Orderly Room,  
" " 8 3rd. Can. Inf. Bde.  
" " 9 to Bombers.  
" " 10 to War Diary  
" " 11 to War Diary.

TRANSPORT ORDERS  
issued as an appendix  
to Operation Order No. 53, of  
14TH CANADIAN BATTALION.

---

1. One G. S. Wagon will report to Battalion Headquarters at 4.30. p. m. for Headquarters Officers kits and Orderly Room effects. Wagon in charge of Q. M. S. A. Plow will go direct to CAFE BELGE, where horses will feed, and wait till dusk, then proceed direct to SWAN CHATEAU.
2. One Limber will report to Battalion Headquarters at 7.30. p. m. for Headquarters cooking effects. Wagon in charge of Cpl. A. Norton. Proceed direct to SWAN CHATEAU.
3. One Limber will report to Pioneer's billet at 4.30. p. m. for tools, etc. Wagon in charge of Sgt. B. Brayton. Proceed direct to CANAL DUGOUTS. Not to pass CAFE BELGE until after dusk.
4. Company and Detail Officers kits which are to be left at Quartermaster's Stores will be collected at 7 p. m.
5. Company and Detail Officers cooking utensils, etc., to be used in Trenches, will be collected at 7.30. p. m. Each Company and Det ail must have one Batman to safeguard their Officer's effects.
6. Company Cookers must be prepared to move at 7.30. p. m. under senior cook of each Company.
7. One Limber will collect bombers, machine gun and Details cooking utensils at 7.30. p. m. One man of each of these units to proceed with Limber.
8. Water cart will proceed at 7.30. p. m. to SWAN CHATEAU.

*L. J. Little*  
14<sup>th</sup> Bn





by  
 Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

Field,  
 May 17th 1916.

Reference Map 1/40000

Relief.

1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will relieve the 13th CANADIAN BATTALION on the night 17/18th May in the left sub-sector, trenches 46-51 inclusive.

Time.

2. All companies and units will leave their present positions at 8.15 p.m. and proceed independently to their new positions.  
 The Battalion Bombers and Intelligence Section will relieve as far as possible before dusk.

Machine Guns.

3. Machine Guns will relieve in accordance with orders issued by the Brigade Machine Gun Officer and Battalion Machine Gun Officer.

Positions.

4. No. 1 Company plus 1 Platoon No. 2 Company will occupy 46, XR, POSSEWAY, LEICESTER SQUARE, XL.

No. 2 Company less 1 Platoon will occupy ARNAGH WOOD.

No. 3 Company will occupy 49, 50, 50a, 51.

No. 4 Company will occupy 47, 47a, 47r, 48, WINDY CORNER, CANADA TRENCH.

Precautions.

5. Officers Commanding Companies and units will take necessary precautions to reduce the possibility of casualties to a minimum during the course of relief and particularly while crossing ground exposed to the enemy's fire.

Advance Parties.

6. Advance Parties of one Officer per company and one N.C.O. per platoon will proceed to the positions to be occupied by their companies before dusk. All advance parties must not move up to the front line in larger parties than three separated by irregular intervals of two to five minutes.

Guides.

7. The Intelligence Section to furnish one Scout to report to Battalion Headquarters and two to No. 4 Company at 7 p.m.

Maps.

8. The out-going Battalion will hand over all Maps, Defence Schemes, Log Books, Plans, etc. relating to their sector.

Transport.

9. The Transport will not move forward from DICKEBUSCH before 8.30 p.m. and must not pass SIRAPHIEL CORNER before 10 p.m.

Working Parties.

10. No working parties will be required on the night of relief. Officers Commanding Companies and units will be careful to ascertain what work is being done in their positions both by night and day and will carry on the morning after relief.

Sand Bags

11. Ten sand bags per man will be carried into the trenches and 1000 sand bags are to be kept in reserve at each Company Headquarters.

17/8/16.

Disposition. 12. Company Commanders will report to Battalion Headquarters by wire as soon as possible after they arrive in trench. They will send their disposition, number of Officers and men, also what Stretcher Bearers, Signallers, Machine Gunners and Bombers they have in their section of trench. Company Commanders must make arrangements to render this report as promptly and as accurately as possible, in order that Brigade may be notified.

13. Acknowledge.

*L. W. Wilton*

Captain and Adjutant,  
13th Canadian Battalion.

Issued at	by Orderly.
Copy No. 1	to No. 1 Company,
" " 2	to " 2 "
" " 3	to " 3 "
" " 4	to " 4 "
" " 5	to Quartermaster.
" " 6	to Regtl. S.M. and Details.
" " 7	to Orderly Room.
" " 8	to 13th Canadian Battalion.
" " 9	to 3rd Can. Inf. Bde.
" " 10	to Adjutant.
" " 11	to War Diary.
" " 12	to War Diary.

In Intelligence Section - Cpl Hodgson  
Batt Bombers Sgt Wilson



by  
Lieut-Col. R. P. Clark,  
Commanding 14th. Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.  
-----

FIELD,  
May 24th. 1916.

Reference Map - Sheet 28, 1/40000.

Relief. 1. The 14th. CANADIAN BATTALION will be relieved by the 7th. CANADIAN BATTALION in the left sub-section on the night of 25/26th. May.

Billets. 2 The 14th. CANADIAN BATTALION will occupy billets at DOMINION LINES, G.23.b.5.5.

Train arrangements.

3. THE 14th. CANADIAN BATTALION upon completion of relief will march by platoons to the usual entraining point H.12.a.2.9. train leaving there at 2.15 a.m. for G.11.a.2.9.

Precautionary Measures.

4 If not actually clear of a line WEST of the CAPE BELGE - YPRES ROAD before dawn platoons will immediately divide into parties of not more than 10 under a N.C.O. and will proceed independently and at irregular intervals (and as far as possible by different routes) to the entraining point. Units not able to catch train before departure will march independently by the best routes to DOMINION LINES.

Officers Commanding Companies and Units will take the necessary precautions to reduce the possibility of casualties to a minimum during the course of relief and particularly while crossing ground exposed to the enemy's fire.

Machine Gun Relief. 5. Machine Guns will be relieved in accordance with arrangements made direct between Brigade Machine Gun Officer and Battalion Machine Gun Officer.

Transport. 6. Transport arrangements will be issued to the Transport Officer direct.

Maps. 7. All maps concerning this area, log books, defence schemes trench stores lists, etc. will be handed to the relieving Unit and receipts in triplicate forwarded to Battalion Headquarters by 3 p.m. May 26th. Under no circumstances are these documents relating to this area to be removed.

Guides. 8. Guides may be required to meet incoming units at TRANSPORT FARM. If required, instructions will be issued later.

Q. O. 55. Cont'd.

- Billeting.** 9. Captain G. E. LEIGHTON is billeting Officer and party has been arranged for. Guided from this party will meet each unit near DOMINION LINES and conduct them to their portion of the camp.
- Meals.** 10. The Quartermaster will arrange that a hot meal is ready for all units of the Battalion on arrival at DOMINION LINES.
- Reports.** 11. Upon completion of their relief Company and Detail Commanders will report to Battalion Headquarters to receive orders to move out. The code word "ROYALTY" only must be used ( e.g. "ROYALTY" No. 1 Company). Upon arrival in billets Company and Detail Commanders must report (by messenger if desired) to Battalion Headquarters giving advice of any casualties.

*G. E. Leighton*

Captain and Adjutant.  
14th. Canadian Battalion.

Issued at	by Orderly.
Copy No. 1	to No. 1 Coy.
" 2	to " 2 "
" 3	to " 3 "
" 4	to " 4 "
" 5	to Regt. Sgt. Major.
" 6	to 3rd. Can. Inf. Bde.
" 7	to Quartermaster
" 8	to Orderly Room
" 9	to Adjutant
" 10	to War Diary
" 11	to " "



# APPENDIX

## SYLLABUS OF TRAINING

May 4th to May 10th 1916.

14th Canadian Battalion,

Royal Montreal Regiment.

### DAILY ROUTINE.

Reveille.....6.00 a.m.  
Roll Call.....6.15 a.m.  
Physical Training...6.30 a.m. to 7.00 a.m.  
Roll Call.....8.30 p.m. ---  
Lights Out.....9.00 p.m.

-----oO-----

- May 4th. Muster Parade, Bathing Parade, Working Party.
- May 5th. *Cancelled* Squad, Platoon and Arm Drill - 9.00 a.m. to 11.00 a.m.
- May 6th. Musketry Drill, Bayonet Fighting - 9.00 a.m. to 11.00 a.m.
- May 7th. Church Parade.
- May 8th. Sports.
- May 9th. Lecture to Companies on Discipline, Care of Arms, Cleaning, Ammunition etc.
- May 11th. Arm Drill, Bayonet Fighting.

-----oO-----

Rifle, Ammunition and Gas Helmet inspection daily.  
Battalion Bombers, Snipers, Observers and Scouts, Signal Section and Machine Gunners will carry out Syllabus of Training.  
In case of wet weather lectures to N.C.O's and Companies.  
Billets will be inspected by Officer Commanding or Second in Command at 10.00 a.m. each day.

(sd) Gault McCombe,

Major,  
14th Canadian Battalion.



CONFIDENTIAL  
WAR DIARY  
OF  
14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION  
JUNE 1916.  
WITH APPENDICES 1 to 14.  
VOLUME 16 - 6.

WAR DIARY

14th Canadian Battalion 1st Cdn. Division,

from 1st to 30th June, 1916.

Volume No. 16.

Diary Text 2 Pages.

- Appendix I Report on counter-attack of Maple Corps on observatory ridge positions June 2nd and 3rd.
- " 2 14th Battalion syllabus of training dated 1st and 2nd June.
- " 3 O.O. No. 56 dated the 12th June, instructions re move of 14th Bn. from PRATICIA into reserve on June 12th.
- " 4 Syllabus of training from June 24th to June 26th.
- " 5 14th Bn. to relieve ~~xxxxxx~~ 4th Cdn. Bn. on June 24th and 25th.
- " 6 Intelligence report June 25th to the 28th.
- " 7 Field Message for the 19th June.
- " 8 Tasks to be completed by 14th Bn. on night of 29th June prior to relief.
- " 9 Minor interprise to be carried out on the 29th and 30th June.
- " 10 Special Order by Lieut. Col. R.P. Clark reference bombing post marked No. 1. Junction T 46 and T 47
- " 11 Reinforcement of officers received during June.
- " 12 Report of Minor operations June 27th.
- " 13 Reference Minor operations June 29th and 30th.
- " 14 Special Operation Order by Lieut. Col. Clark, instructions re attack on June 29th by 14th Bn.

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR

DIARY

JUNE

1916.

TEXT.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

June 1916

Page 1

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
BRIGADE RESERVE	1		Battalion in Brigade Reserve (DOMINION LINES). Fine Weather. Syllabus of Training attached.	
"	2		Battalion in Brigade Reserve. Heavy Enemy bombardment on Mount Sorrel Sector. Fine weather. See attached history.	F 1
TRENCHES	3		Battalion in trenches. See attached History.	F 1.
BRIGADE RESERVE	4		Battalion arrived DOMINION LINES in the early morning. Excellent weather. Battalion resting.	
"	5		Battalion moved from DOMINION LINES to PATRICIA LINES. Divisional Reserve. Fine day.	
DIVISIONAL RESERVE	6		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Draft of 20 O.R. arrived. Private H.A. Davin appointed temporary Lieutenant. The whole day devoted to re-equipment and re-organization.	
"	7		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Draft of 150 other ranks received.	
"	8		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Bathing Parade. Very fine day.	
"	9		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Visit and address by Major General A.W. Currie, C.B., G.O.C. 1st Canadian Division.	
"	10		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Draft of 15 O.R. received. Visit and address by Brigadier-General G.S. Tuxford, C.M.G., G.O.C. 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade.	
"	11		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Draft of 308 O.R. received. See attached History for working parties supplied by 14th Battalion in the counter attack on Mount Sorrel.	
"	12		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Bathing Parade in afternoon. See attached history. Battalion moved from PATRICIA LINES at 5 p.m. to "D" Camp on the Vlamertinghe - Ouderdom Road. Very wet weather.	
BRIGADE RESERVE	13		Battalion in Brigade Reserve. Very bad weather. See attached history.	
"	14		Battalion in Brigade Reserve moving into Brigade Support at 7 p.m. Battalion Headquarters at Swan Chateau, three companies in SEGARD CHATEAU grounds and details, and one Company at MOATED FARM.	
BRIGADE RESERVE	15		Battalion in Brigade Support. Working Party of one Officer and 52 other ranks furnished. Training of new drafts in trench manners and discipline, in the trenches in the vicinity of SWAN CHATEAU, e.g. Listening posts established, Trench Reliefs, Patrolling.	0.0. 56.

14th Canadian  
Battalion

WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

June 1916.

Page 2.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
BRIGADE SUPPORT.	16		Battalion in Brigade Support. Attack by Guards' Division - very heavy Bombardment. Reinforcement of 1 O.R. received.	
"	17		Battalion in Brigade Support. Working parties of 5 Officers and 134 other ranks furnished. Very fine weather. 2 Officers reinforcements.	
"	18		Battalion in Brigade Support. 16 Officers taken on the strength of Battalion vide Nominal Roll attached. Weather continues to be fine.	
"	19		Battalion in Brigade Support, moving to KENORA CAMP at 8 p.m. Transportation by busses.	
DIVISIONAL RESERVE	20		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Muster Parade in afternoon. Weather showery.	
"	21		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Vide Syllabus of Training attached.	
"	22		Fine weather. Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Bathing Parade.	
"	23		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Vide Syllabus of Training attached. Recommending party to trenches. Several thunder showers.	
"	24		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Fine day. Battalion to trenches 45 to 52 inclusive (Centre Sector) Battalion Headquarters at BATTERSEA FARM.	
TRENCHES	25		Battalion in trenches. Desultory artillery fire on both sides. British Aircraft active. Wind E.N.E. very light. 1 O.R. wounded.	
"	26		Battalion in trenches. No activity worth mention. Gas Alert on in morning cancelled & in at night. Wind S.W. very light. 3 O.R. killed 5 O.R. suffering from severe shell shock, 4 O.R. wounded. See Intelligence Report attached.	
"	27		Battalion in trenches. Enemy bombarded front line heavily between 4 a.m. and 5.15 a.m., afterwards situation fairly quiet. Wing light N.N.W. Lieutenant John Mills Killed; 14 O.R. Killed; 12 O.R. wounded, 1 O.R. Missing, 1 O.R. died of wounds. <i>see attached report</i>	
"	28		Battalion in trenches. Situation Normal & No Wind. Captain R.W. Frost suffering from shell shock 2 O.R. killed, 12 O.R. wounded, 2 O.R. Missing.	
"	29		Battalion in trenches. Artillery fairly active on both sides. See Intelligence Report attached, also report on Minor Operations. 14th Canadian Battalion relieved by 8th Canadian Battalion.	
BRIGADE RESERVE	30.		Battalion in Brigade Reserve at DOMINION LINES. Day devoted to Cleaning up and re-equipment where necessary.	

*[Handwritten notes and signatures in the right margin, including several 'A.2.' entries and a large signature 'R.P. Clark']*

A.2.  
A.2.  
A.2.  
A.2.  
A.2.

*R.P. Clark*  
Lieut.-Colonel,  
Cmdg. 14th Canadian Battalion.

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR DIARY

JUNE 1916.

APPENDICES 1 to 14.



14th. CANADIAN BATTALION  
ROYAL MONTREAL REGIMENT

*affidavit /  
Typed*

COUNTER ATTACK ON

MAPLE COPSE AND OBSERVATORY RIDGE POSITIONS

NIGHT OF JUNE 2/3rd. 1916

-----oCo-----

On June 2nd the Battalion was still in reserve at Dominion Lines. Orders received through the day hinted that the men might be called upon to go up forward where, evidently fighting was in progress. 'Stand-to' was called early in the afternoon on an order from Brigade Headquarters. Early in the evening the Battalion was ordered to move to H.17.c. a rendezvous previously decided upon. At 7.30 P.M. the whole Battalion moved out from the Lines under Major G. McCombe with Major A.T. Powell acting second in command and Capt. F.W. Utton Adjutant, to this spot by the route reconnoitred and known by the Regimental Officers in anticipation of such contingency viz., G.24.A.C.5. to G.30.B.4.9 $\frac{1}{2}$ . thence through G.24.C.10.6., G.10.B.8.10., to G.14.B.4.8. thence through H.15. to a point about H.16.C.1.1. - where the Battalion was met by Staff-Captain Urquhart of the 3rd. Canadian Inf. Brigade. with orders to move forward and take up a position near Zillebeke in battle formation, the left flank of the Battalion to rest upon Zillebeke Lake and the right flank near to Zillebeke Halte. Major McCombe was ordered to report to Brigade Headquarters, Railway Dugouts. in H.21.C. He instructed Company Commanders to move their Units across country to the place appointed, before leaving. The Companies and Details moved off independently in open formation across country by different routes, to the rendezvous. No.1 Company under Capt. R.W. Frost was the first to reach there arriving about 1 A.M. on the morning of June 3rd. It was followed by No. 2 Company under Lieut. Worrall, then No. 3 Company under Capt. C.B. Price and finally No. 4 Company in charge of Lieut. Beaton. The Machine Gun Detail which had throughout, moved forward ahead of and independently from the Battalion marched to the Engineers Dump at Kruistraat, unloaded their limbers there. sent two teams with numbers 5 and 6 guns to report to the 15th. Canadian Battalion under Sergt. Bagnall while the other four teams under Lieut. J.K. Nesbitt proceeded to Zillebeke Halte taking with them four Lewis Guns with necessary supplies of S.A.A. and leaving 12000 rounds for a reserve at Transport Farm. At Zillebeke Halte Lieut. Nesbitt received orders to take up a position on the left of Observatory Ridge Road and to cover the advance of the Battalion. He led his teams up and was the first of all the Battalion to arrive on the ground. He was spotted by German scouts for, immediately an intense barrage was placed over the whole district through which the remainder of the Battalion had to pass. Two guns with their teams were sent in the direction of Maple Copse and were got into position about 75 yards behind a hedge where they could enfilade the whole front of the remainder of the Battalion. No. 2 Company subsequently took up their position with these two guns - on their right flank. Sergt. Bagnall then reported that his two teams and guns were in position in Maple Copse, while the other two under the direction of Lieut. Nesbitt were set up in support on Observatory Ridge. The whole Battery was ready at 2.45 A.M.

The Battalion Bombers went up as a detail with the Battalion right to the final position for the advance, where under the direction of their O.C. Lieut. F. Owen they spread out in file to prepare to bomb their way up the former main communicating trench through Maple Copse, Durham Lane.

Battalion Scouts and Intelligence men under Lieut. C.G. Fewer guided the Battalion first to H.17.C. and then to Zillebeke Halte



Halte, thence to Valley Farm where they were ordered to remain. They constructed a Regimental aid-post there and established connection by runner. As the Battalion advanced they searched the ground behind for wounded, whom they brought in, and from whom they were able to gain information as to the progress of the advance to report to Headquarters. They then acted as stretcher bearers and runners through the remainder of the day.

Signallers also went up as a Detail and did magnificent work under Sergt. Close both in establishing connecting lines between Headquarters and what was eventually the firing-line and in maintaining that communication in spite of the greatest danger and difficulty throughout the day.

When the Battalion had taken up its appointed position in battle formation at Zillebeke Halte word was received from Major McCombe, who had returned from Brigade Headquarters with fresh instructions, that the whole would advance to a fresh position in front of Zillebeke Village and near to Observatory Ridge, the right of the Battalion to rest upon the ridge Road and the left upon Maple Copse. The Battalion then moved forward through the village in lines of platoons in extended order. Numbers 1 and 2 Companies were in the first lines with numbers one and five platoons leading. In support of No. 1 Company moved No. 3 Company in similar formation, while No. 4 Company supported No. 2 Company. The Bombers moved on the extreme left and the machine guns rested in positions already assigned them. Going up in this order the Battalion came under heavy shell fire and suffered grievously. Capt. Price, Lieut. Lugar and Lieut. Rexford were all hit by shells in front of Zillebeke village. The Battalion moved forward steadily up to the new position, and started to dig in at about 6 A.M.

At 8.17 A.M. word was received to advance. Under Major Powell the whole Battalion swept forward. They were met with a concentrated machine gun and rifle fire from the enemy's trenches and an almost incredible weight of artillery was brought to bear upon them. Steadily they went forward, the lines reforming automatically as the growing number of casualties robbed the first lines of their effectiveness. For almost three hundred yards they continued towards the German trenches, one Officer, Lieut. Major with a small following actually reaching the German Line, other parties advancing right up to his wire. Major Powell finding his strength reduced to one third and losing heavily at every step then stopped the advance and ordered the Battalion to dig in where it stood. Under continuous heavy fire of all descriptions the Battalion established a line here, dug in and held it all day until relieved early the following morning.

Battalion Bombers advancing on the left flank proceeded up Durham Lane as far as possible, then finding that blocked crawled from shell hole to shell hole in file keeping in alignment with the Battalion and dug in on the same line, having lost their Officer, wounded on the way.

Four teams with Lewis guns followed the advance of the firing line after having covered the advance with their fire to the last possible moment. Two teams reached positions on the forward slope of Observatory ridge facing Mount Sorrel, suffering heavily on their way. The other two teams were wiped out in advancing all but one man, Pte. Imray who recovered a gun, carried it forward, retrieved ammunition from his comrades, set up the gun and got it into action unaided. He kept it going whenever necessary through the day, brought it out at night and reported himself with the gun intact to his Officer. Another gun team reduced from 6 to 2 also kept a gun in action until relieved at night.

Major Powell kept charge of the firing line, although wounded, until it appeared to be established, when he handed over to Lieut. R.A. Pelletier, who although blown up twice and once rendered unconscious for a short time kept the command, and handed over only to the relieving Battalion. No communication with Headquarters was possible for over three hours. Through the day the firing line was never stronger than about 80 of all ranks with small detached parties on the flanks, the whole representing what remained of the Battalion.

Lieut. Major who penetrated furthest of all, with his small party never came back from the German Line. Lieut. W.E. Beaton in charge of No. 4 Company, with a small party of 35 all ranks advanced far on the extreme left and got into direct touch with the enemy at a point about Hedge Street. He found himself cut off from the rest of the Battalion and under the enfilade fire of a machine gun. They halted there at 9 A.M. Lieut. Beaton lined up his party facing left of the advance, kept sentries posted and patrols going, to keep in touch with the enemy all day. At night the enemy concentrated trench mortars and guns upon this small force and rendered their position untenable. They retired and got into touch with the balance of the Battalion. Lieut. Beaton had been assisted materially by Sergt. H. Hunt who aside from taking over and leading No. 2 Co. when all the Officers were casualties, showed magnificent courage in leaving his trench time and again under heavy fire to recover wounded and to dress their injuries. He was subsequently killed by a trench mortar bomb.

Sergt. B. Topham of No. 3 Co. led a detached party on the left, became detached from the Battalion went up far in advance and came into touch with the enemy near Durham Lane. He maintained his position all day in spite of efforts to eject him and only brought his greatly reduced party out at night to rejoin the Battalion.

Of the Officers of Companies and Details taking part in the advance every one was either killed, wounded, blown up or buried by shells. Major Powell, Capt. C.B. Price, Lieut. Lugar, Lieut. Worrall, Lieut. Evans, Lieut. Torrance, Lieut. O'Brien, Lieut. Rexford, Lieut. MacKenzie, Lieut. Owen, Lieut. Walker and Lieut. Marion were all wounded. Capt. E.A. Whitehead, Lieut. A.F. Major and Lieut. M.M. Grondin were killed. Capt. Frost was twice blown up by shells but remained on duty. Lieut. Pelletier had a similar experience and also remained so did Lieut. Nesbitt who was partially buried. Lieut. Beaton had a shell splinter in his shoulder but did not leave his post nor did Lieut. McKenna wounded in the hand. Major G. McCombe, Capt. F.W. Utton and Lieut. C. G. Power came through unscathed.

Headquarters of the Battalion were first established in a cellar at Valley Cottages, but when the line advanced, after a reconnaissance by Capt. Utton and Capt. Whitehead, Headquarters moved to a crazy dug-out under the crest of Observatory Ridge. There it remained until the relief came.

The M.O. of the Battalion Capt. McAlister with his assistants first worked at the aid-post established at Valley Cottages then finding the position untenable owing to shell fire and his wounded almost impossible to evacuate through the barrages, removed to Railway dugouts.

Three Company Sergt-Majors were killed, one of them Co. Sergt Major Rankin of No. 1 Co. being killed right on the German wire. Co. Sergt. Major Armstrong of No. 3 Co. and Co. Sergt. Major Duhamel of No. 4 Co. were also killed. Altogether the Battalion lost in this advance 379 all ranks.

It had achieved what would have been a fine feat for the best troops in the World. The men had come up to unknown ground on an

an unknown task through miles of country under intermittent shell-fire without any loss of morale. They had advanced through two of the most severe barrages of artillery fire possible to imagine. They had established a line through a bad gap in our defences under the same conditions; prevented any further advance of the enemy to the key of the salient; had reclaimed a large portion of ground written off as lost and had established a line from which a successful attack on the lost positions could be and was eventually launched.

The Battalion was relieved early in the morning of June 4th, and marched to Dominion Lines. On the following afternoon they were ordered to Patricia Lines. Lieut. Beaton and Lieut. Nesbitt responded to a call from Col. Clark for volunteers to go back and bury the dead. They took fifty other ranks with them, and did much valuable work in burial of the dead and reclaiming the wounded who had been overlooked, on that night June 4/5th. This party suffered three killed.

Further large part was taken by the Battalion in the successful efforts of the 1st. Canadian Division to retake the lost positions. A large reinforcement of 150 men arrived on June 6th, and these were largely drawn upon to make up working parties of 150 sent out the following day. The part of these parties was to assist in consolidation after the assault then pending. Before the assault took place the Regiment received 300 further reinforcements and was again called upon to furnish large parties for difficult and dangerous jobs as follows:-

Party "A" 2 Officers and 158 Other Ranks. Employed on entrenching and consolidating new line between 13th. and 16th. Battalions. Carrying wire and trench material. This party worked in the front line and suffered heavily, Lieut. Davin being killed and Lieut. Bonshor being wounded together with 15 other ranks killed, 13 wounded and 21 missing.

Party "B" 1 Officer and 32 Other Ranks. Employed in carrying S.A.A. to front line and supports. Casualties, 1 killed, 1 wounded and 3 missing. Lieut. Banks in charge.

Party "C" 54 Other Ranks. Employed carrying bombs from Brigade Reserve to front line and supports. Casualties, 2 killed, 3 wounded and 2 missing.

Party "D" 42 Other Ranks. Employed as stretcher bearers. This party went up with the attacking forces, attended the wounded and carried stretcher cases to the dressing station. Casualties, 1 wounded and 1 missing.

Party "E" 2 Officers and 108 Other Ranks. Employed carrying ammunition and bombs etc. Also detailed as ration parties to 13th. and 16th. Battalion. Casualties 1 wounded.

Party "F" 17 Other Ranks. Employed on wiring under supervision of C.E. No. casualties.

Party "G" Battle Stops at specified points. 21 Other Ranks. No casualties.

Party "H" 2 Officers and 108 Other Ranks. Employed carrying wire and entrenching material. Casualties, 2 Other Ranks wounded and 1 missing.

The following letters of appreciation were received from the Officers commanding the 13th. and 16th. Battalions.

" Dear Clark,

I want to thank you most sincerely for allowing your Stretcher Bearers to come up with the 13th. in the recent show.

The men did their work splendidly and were the means of saving many of our men's lives.

They certainly did well and showed great heroism in the way they tended the wounded although exposed to heavy fire.

fire.

You will please express to these men the deep appreciation of the 13th. for the excellent work they did.

I regret the casualties you have suffered and for the lives lost.

Yours sincerely,

Victor C. Buchanan."

19/6/16.

-----  
-----  
The Canadian Scottish.  
June 17th. 1916.

"My Dear Clark,

I wish to thank your Regiment for sending the stretcher bearing party to help us out. They were of very great assistance, otherwise so many wounded would have been left out.

I hope you are all getting into shape again.

Yours sincerely,

J. E. Leckie."

-----  
-----  
Major-General R. E. W. Turner C.B., V.C., D.S.O. Writes as follows:

2nd. Canadian Division.

"My Dear Clark,

Just a line to congratulate you on the splendid work lately carried out by the 14th. Canadian Battalion.

I regret deeply the loss of so many good Officers, but am satisfied a good toll was taken of the enemy.

My kindest wishes to you all.

Yours sincerely,

R. E. W. Turner."



14th CANADIAN BATTALION  
ROYAL MONTREAL REGIMENT.

SYLLABUS OF TRAINING.

June 1st.

6.45 to 7.15 a.m. Physical Training.  
 9.00 to 11. a.m. (1) Details will carry on instruction and practice under their Officers and N.C.O's.  
 (2) Nos. 1, 2 and 4 Companies - Platoon- and Section Drill with serge jackets and full equipment save packs, blankets and rubber sheets. Inspections by the Officer Commanding at 9.00, 9.45 and 10.30 in the above order.  
 (3) No. 3 Company will furnish a working party of 2 N.C.O's, and 40 O.R. to report to Lieutenant Maxion for repairs to the rifle ranges.  
 Remainder - Bayonet Fighting.

June 2nd.

8.30 a.m. EVERY AVAILABLE Officer and rifle will parade in Battalion Mass formation on No. 2 Company's Parade Ground. Companies will be inspected beforehand and marched to the Parade Ground to be formed up by the R.S.M. for the C.O's inspection at 8.30 a.m. Parade will face N.W.  
Dress. Full marching order without packs.  
Mounts. All mounted officers will be mounted.  
Band. The Band of the 60th Battalion will parade here at 8.45 a.m. - in rear of the Signallers but who will be on the extreme right of the Battalion.

-----oooOoooo-----



Lieut-Colonel R.P.Clark  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

FIELD  
 June 12th 1916.

Reference Map -Sheet 28, 1/40000.

1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will move from the Patricia into reserve at Camp "D", (H.14.c.4.7.) on the evening of June 12th, 1916.
2. The Battalion will leave present camp at 5.30 p.m. sharp in full marching order.
3. Billeting party, which has already been detailed, will meet Battalion near CAMP "D" and conduct parties and units to their billets. Captain F.B.D. Larken will be in charge of party.
4. All ranks must remain in CAMP "D" upon arrival and be prepared to move immediately, if required.
5. Transport will collect Headquarters effects, Company Officers' effects, Signallers Stores, etc., at 5 p.m.
6. Scouts will be detailed immediately to reconnoitre the best (and alternative) routes from CAMP "D" to CAFE BELGE, one per Company.
7. Hot tea to be served to the troops upon reaching destination
8. All Companies and units must report after their arrival to Battalion Headquarters.
9. Acknowledge.

(SGD) F.W. Utton,  
 Captain and Adjutant,  
 14th Canadian Battalion

Issued at 2 p.m. by Orderly,

Copy No 1 to No 1 Coy.

"	" 2 "	" 2 "
"	" 3 "	" 3 "
"	" 4 "	" 4 "
"	" 5 "	R.M.S. and Details.
"	" 6 "	Quartermaster and Transport Officer.
"	" 7 "	Orderly Room
"	" 8 "	Adjutant.
"	" 9 "	1st Can Inf Bde.
"	" 10 "	War Diary
"	" 11 "	War Diary.





Appendix 4

A.2.

SYLLABUS OF TRAINING

14th Canadian Battalion, Royal Montreal Regiment.

June 21st to June 26th inclusive  
-----oOo-----

- Wednesday 9 a.m. - 11 a.m. Section and Platoon Drill.
- June 21st. 11 a.m. - 12 noon Officers practical instruction in Machine Gunnery.
- Thursday. 9 a.m. - 11 a.m. Musketry instruction with and without Smoke Helmet: Bayonet Fighting.
- June 22nd. 11 a.m. - 12 noon Officers Practical Instruction in Bombing
- Friday. 9 a.m. - 11 a.m. Section, Platoon and Company Drill.
- June 23rd. 11 a.m. - 12 noon Officers Revolver Practice.
- Saturday 9 a.m. - 11 a.m. Company in Attack.
- June 24th
- Sunday Church Parade.
- June 25th.
- Monday. 9 a.m. - 11 a.m. Battalion in Attack.
- June 26th.

N. B.

1. Physical Drill daily except Sunday, 6.45 a.m. - 7.15 a.m.
2. Lectures will be delivered to all Officers in the evenings on the following subjects:-
  - Lewis Machine Gun.
  - Stokes Gun.
  - Grenade Work
  - Instruction obtained from a recent attendant at the Gas Course.
  - Musketry.
3. Company Commanders and Officers Commanding Details will render a report at the end of the tour in billets showing exactly what training has been carried out by their respective units.

(sd) Gault McCombe  
Major,  
14th Canadian Battalion.

SCHEDULE OF TRAINING CARRIED OUT BY

14th Canadian Battalion - Royal Montreal Regt.

during tour in Billets at KENORA CAMP, June 21st to June 26th

No. 1 COMPANY.

- 6.45 a.m. Daily - Physical Training.
- 9 a.m. - 11 a.m. Section and Platoon Drill
- One hour each morning - Bayonet Fighting and Company Drill.
- Musketry Training with and without Smoke
- Helmets, Judging Distances

Two successive mornings Bombing classes of 2 Officers and 20 other Ranks were sent to Divisional Grenade School for instruction.

Lectures were given on Smoke Helmets and rapid adjustment of same, Sanitation of Trenches and Camps, Trench Discipline and Precautions to be taken when in trenches, and Duties and Reasons of Bombing Posts.

An N.C.O. Class was formed and was carried out successfully.

Kit Inspection.

Lecture on First Aid and the use of the Field Dressing.

The use of the Periscope explained and demonstrated.

(sd) J.C.K. Carson

Capt. O.C. No. 1 Co.

No. 2 COMPANY.

- June 21st. 6.45 a.m. - 7.30 a.m. Physical Training.
- 9.00 a.m. - 11 a.m. Company and Platoon Drill
- 11 a.m. - 12 noon. Lecture to Officers. (Lewis Gun).
- June 22nd. 9.00 a.m. - 11 a.m. Musketry Instruction, with and without Smoke Helmet, Bayonet Fighting.
- 6.45 a.m. - 7.45 a.m. Physical Training.
- June 23rd. 7.30 a.m. - 10.30 a.m. Bathing Parade.
- 11 a.m. - 12 noon. Lecture to N.C.O's and men on Trench Discipline, Smartness Personal Cleanliness and behaviour

MACHINE GUN SECTION

- June 24th. 8.30 a.m. - 9.30 a.m. Inspection of Company and Drill until interrupted by weather.
- June 25th. 1.30 p.m. Inspection for trenches.

(sd) G. E. Leighton

Captain, O.C. No. 2 Company.

No. 3 COMPANY.

- June 21st. 6.45 a.m. - 7.15 a.m. Physical Training.
- 9.00 a.m. - 11 a.m. Section and Platoon Drill.
- 11 a.m. - 12 noon. Instruction of Officers in Lewis Gun at range.
- June 22nd. 6.45 a.m. - 7.15 a.m. Physical Training.
- 9.00 a.m. - 11 a.m. Smoke Helmet Drill and Musketry with and without Smoke Helmets.
- 11.00 a.m. - 12 noon. Bayonet Fighting.
- June 23rd. 2.00 p.m. - 4.00 p.m. Instruction of Officers in Bombing.
- 9.00 a.m. - 11.00 a.m. Instruction of N.C.O's under Company Sergeant Major.
- 10.15 a.m. - 11 a.m. Practical demonstrations, joints, etc.

SCHEDULE OF TRAINING CARRIED OUT BY14th Canadian Battalion - Royal Montreal Regt.during tour of Billets at KENORA CAMP, June 21st to June 26thNo. 1 COMPANY.

6.45 a.m. Daily - Physical Training.  
 9 a.m. - 11 a.m. " - ( Section and Platoon Drill  
 .. { Bayonet Fighting and Company Drill.  
 One hour each morning - Musketry Training with and without Smoke  
 .. Helmets, Judging Distances

Two successive mornings Bombing classes of 2 Officers and 20 other Ranks were sent to Divisional Grenade School for instruction.

Lectures were given on Smoke Helmets and rapid adjustment of same, Sanitation of Trenches and Camps, Trench Discipline and precautions to be taken when in trenches, and Duties and Reasons of Bombing Posts.

An N.C.O. Class was formed and was carried out successfully. Kit Inspection.

Lecture on First Aid and the use of the Field Dressing.

The use of the Periscope explained and demonstrated.

(sd) J.C.K. Carson

Capt. O.C. No. 1 Co.

No. 2 COMPANY.

June 21st. 6.45 a.m. - 7.30 a.m. Physical Training.  
 9.00 a.m. - 11 a.m. Company and Platoon Drill  
 11 a.m. - 12 noon. Lecture to Officers.  
 (Lewis Gun).

June 22nd. 9.00 a.m. - 11 a.m. Musketry Instruction, with and  
 without Smoke Helmet, Bayonet  
 Fighting.  
 6.45 a.m. - 7.45 a.m. Physical Training.

June 23rd. 7.30 a.m. - 10.30 a.m. Bathing Parade.  
 11 a.m. - 12 noon. Lecture to N.C.O's and men  
 on Trench Discipline, Smartness  
 Personal Cleanliness and behaviour

June 24th. 8.30 a.m. - 9.30 a.m. Inspection of Company and Drill  
 until interrupted by weather.  
 1.30 p.m. Inspection for trenches.

(sd) G. E. Leighton  
 Captain,  
 O.C. No. 2 Company.

No. 3 COMPANY.

June 21st. 6.45 a.m. - 7.15 a.m. Physical Training.  
 9.00 a.m. - 11 a.m. Section and Platoon Drill.  
 11 a.m. - 12 noon. Instruction of Officers in Lewis  
 Gun at range.

June 22nd. 6.45 a.m. - 7.15 a.m. Physical Training.  
 9.00 a.m. - 11 a.m. Smoke helmet Drill and Musketry  
 with and without Smoke Helmets.  
 Bayonet Fighting.  
 11.00 a.m. - 12 noon. Instruction of Officers in Bombing.  
 2.00 p.m. - 4.00 p.m. Instruction of N.C.O's under  
 Company Sergeant Major.

h  
Schedule of Training (continued).

No. 3 COMPANY. (cont'd)

June 28rd. 6.45 a.m. to 7.45 a.m. Physical Training.  
2.00 p.m. " 4.00 p.m. Instruction of N.C.O's. in  
Drill under Company Sergeant  
Major.

Bombing Sections were given practical instruction in  
bombing and the remainder of the Company lectured on the MILLS  
Bomb.

(sd) Charles. G. Power,  
Lieutenant,  
O. C. No. 3 Company.

-----oOo-----

No. 4 COMPANY.

From 6.45 a.m. to 7.15 a.m. daily Physical Drill

June 21st. One hour was spent in Section and Platoon Drill  
and one hour in Company Drill, also half-an-hour Lecture  
on First Aid by Company Officers.

June 22nd. One hour in Musketry instruction, with and without  
Smoke Helmets and one hour in Bayonet Fighting. A lecture  
on Trench Discipline by Company Commander.

June 23rd. Three Officers and Company Sergeant Major went  
to visit new line of trenches. The remainder of the  
Company attended bathing parade. Our bombing Platoon  
received instruction in bombing and throwing live grenades.

June 24th. Kit inspection by Platoon Commanders, an issue of nec  
essaries was made supervised by Company Sergeant Major.

-----  
(sd) W. E. Seaton,  
Lieutenant,  
O.C. No. 4 Company.  
-----oOo-----

MACHINE GUN SECTION.

Hours:- 6.45 - 7.15 a.m. & 11 a.m.

			2 - 4 p.m.
<u>June 21st.</u>	Physical Training.	Lewis Gun drill and Firing at ranges.	Magazine filling etc.
<u>June 22nd.</u>	"	"	"
<u>June 23rd.</u>	"	"	"
<u>June 24th.</u>	"	"	"
<u>June 21st</u>	"	"	"

(sd) J. K. Nesbitt  
Lieutenant, M. G. O.

-----oOo-----

SIGNAL SECTION.

June 21st. 6.45 a.m. to 7.15 a.m. Physical Training.  
9.00 a.m. " 11.00 a.m. Test Groups - Discs.  
10.15 a.m. " 11 a.m. Practical Demonstrations, Joints, Knots  
etc.

3.

Schedule of Training. (cont'd)

SIGNAL SECTION (cont'd).

June 22nd. 6.45 a.m. - 7.15 a.m. Physical Training.  
9.00 a.m. - 11 a.m. Station work (Morse-Flags). (Seniors)  
Flag Drill (Morse) (Juniors)

June 23rd. bathing Parade.

June 24th. 9.30 a.m. - 10.30 a.m. buzzer Practice.

(sd) E. A. Adams,  
Lieutenant,  
O.C. Signals.

-----oOo-----  
INTELLIGENCE SECTION.

Training 15/6/16. Rifle Inspection, Sanitary work, constructed men's  
Latrine.

16/6/16. Officer and N.C.O's. attended bombing demonstration  
and lecture. Rifle inspection. 5 Scouts,  
reconnoitred routes between Cafe Belge and Transport  
Farm.

17/6/16. Rifle inspection and Smoke Helmet Inspection. Practice  
and Demonstration of new method of carrying smoke  
helmet during "gas Alert". N.C.O's. and 5 men given  
instruction in use of Lewis Gun. 6 men reconnoitering  
remainder Map Sketching.

(sd) A. L. McLean,  
Lieutenant,  
Intelligence Officer.

-----oOo-----  
BOMBERS.

June 21st. 6.45 a.m. - 7.15 a.m. Physical training.  
9.00 a.m. - 11 a.m. Throwing Practice.

June 22nd. 6.45 a.m. - 7.15 a.m. Physical Training.  
9.00 a.m. - 11 a.m. Throwing Practice.

June 23rd. 6.45 a.m. - 7.15 a.m. Physical Training.  
9.00 a.m. - 11 a.m. Throwing Practice.

June 24th. inspection of grenades. Detonating of same.

(sd) S. S. Jones,  
Lieutenant,  
O. C. Bombers.

-----oOo-----  
OFFICERS.

The following Lectures were delivered to Officers:-

Lewis Machine Gun  
Trench Duties.  
Employment of Bombs.  
Stokes Gun.  
Lee Enfield Rifle

By Sergeant Lemman.  
" Major McCombe.  
" Lieutenant Higginson.  
" "  
" Corporal Penman.

All Officers attended practical demonstration of Lewis Gun  
each Officer firing a few rounds.

(sd) Gault McCombe.  
Major.



Lieut. Colonel R.P. Clark  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

Field  
 June 24th 1946

Reference Map, Sheet 28, 1/40000.

- BATTALION RELIEF.** 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will relieve the 4th CANADIAN BATTALION in the centre sector, trenches 45 to 52 inclusive, on the night of June 24th /25th.
- UNIT RELIEFS.** 2. No 1 Company relieves "B" Company of the 4th Battalion on the right front line trenches, No 2 Company relieves "D" Company on the left front line trenches, No 3 Company relieves "A" Company in Support near BATTERSEA FARM.
- TRANSPORTATION** 3. 17 Busses will arrive at present camp at 6p.m. to transport Nos. 1 and 2 Companies, Bombers, Signallers and two Machine Gun Crews.  
 17 Busses at 8p.m. for Nos 3 and 4 Companies, Headquarters, Intelligence, Machine Gun, and balance of Unit.  
 Destination of Busses, H. 15.c. 4.8. from which point units will proceed independently.
- GUIDES** 4. Guides of the 4th CANADIAN BATTALION will meet 14th CANADIAN BATTALION at ZILLIBERKE HALT at 10.15 pm as follows:-
- 1 guide per platoon
  - 1 guide for each Machine Gun Crew
  - 1 guide for each Bombing Post
  - 1 guide for Battalion Headquarters
  - 1 guide for Scouts.
- DEFENCE SCHEMES ETC.** 5. All defence schemes, maps, photographs, documents, etc. relating to the forward area, will be handed over by the units relieved.
- Precautionary Measures.** 6. Company and Unit Commanders will take steps to reduce to a minimum the possibility of any casualties occurring during the progress of the relief, particularly when crossing open ground.
- Headquarters** 7. BATTALION HEADQUARTERS will be at BATTERSEA FARM.
- Equipment.** 8. Each N.C.O. and man will carry one Mills grenade and 10 sand bags. Care must be taken to ensure that the operation of the grenade is thoroughly understood by all ranks. Valises with service caps inside, to be left at Transport, and to be turned over to respective Q.M. Sergeants at 2p.m. today at the end of each Companies lines.
- Rations.** 9. 24 hours cooked rations to be carried.
- Advance Party** 10. Each Company Commander, 1 N.C.O. of each Company, Machine Gun and Bombing Officers, and the Regimental Sergeant Major to leave this afternoon for trenches, to take over, check up stores, etc. Time of departure to be arranged between them, and to be as soon after lunch as possible.



- Officers. 11. The following Officers only to go to trenches with Battalion:-
- Headquarters. Lt-Col R.P. Clark, Major G. McCombe,  
- Captain J.W. McAllister, Lieut. A. Plow,  
Details. Lieut. J.K. Nesbitt, Lieut. S.S. Jones,  
Lieut. A.L. McLean.
- No 1 Company. Captain J.C.K. Carson, Lieut. J.E. McKenna, Lieut. W.W. Pickup, Lieut. G.B. Murray.
- No 2 Company. Captain G.E. Leighton, Captain J.F. Adams  
Lieut. D.J. Evans, Lieut. C.H. Sullivan.
- No 3 Company. Lieut. C.G. Power, Lieut. R.H. Hood,  
Lieut. C.H. Sclater, Lieut. J. Mills.
- No 4 Company. Lieut. Beaton, Lieut. R.A. Pelletier,  
Lieut. C.J. Larzen, Lieut. E. McM Hyma
- Working Parties. 12. Officers Commanding Companies and Units must ascertain what work is being carried on in their area and carry on the morning of their relief.
- Signals. 13. As little conversation as possible must be carried on over the wires owing to the danger of being overheard by the enemy. Messages that may be of the slightest importance to the enemy must be conveyed by RUNNER. Battalion Headquarters to be addressed as "JACK"
- Secrecy. 14. After this order is thoroughly understood and the necessary extracts, if any, taken, same must be destroyed.
- Reports. 15. Company and Unit Commanders will send their disposition reports by RUNNER to Headquarters as soon as possible after relief, making same out accurately, in order that Brigade may be notified.

(Sgd) F.W. Utton  
Captain and Adjutant,  
14th Canadian Battalion.

Copy No 1 to No 1 Company.  
" " 2 " " 2 "  
" " 3 " " 3 "  
" " 4 " " 4 "  
" " 5 " Regtl. Sergt, Maj. and details.  
" " 6 " Quartermaster.  
" " 7 " Orderly Room.  
" " 8 " 3rd Canadian Inf. Bde.  
" " 9 " 4th Canadian Battalion  
" " 10 " Adjutant.  
" " 11 " War Diary  
" " 12 " War Diary.



Intelligence Report. 25/6/16

14th Gen Bn

Our Operations (1) Our 18 pdrs. retaliated on enemy trenches during morning opposite T 51

Enemy's Activity. (1) Very quiet his attention apparently being taken up with consolidating his new line.

(2) At dusk last night enemy fired about 15 shells about 5.9" at Manor Farm and Zillbeke Halt. These appear to come from a very high velocity gun at great range as the flash of the gun could be seen nearly 15 seconds before the shell burst but shells travelled at such speed that neither the sound of the gun <sup>or</sup> the shell travelling through the air could be heard. 50 shells of medium calibre were fired at T 51 and 52 and about 12 5.9" H.E. in vicinity of Square Wood. Several T.M. bombs landed near T 51 in afternoon. Sniping very quiet.

Enemy Defences. (1) Enemy new front line appears to run from I 30 central to I 30 w 7 1/2.0 and from there to along our old 485 to a point about I 30 w 5 1/2.0 thence into old 47 F.T. possibly rejoining his front line at I 30 c 3.7. This latter part is not certain but probable. Working parties <sup>were observed</sup> at several points during day. Enemy has <sup>not</sup> advanced or bombing post in our old 485 about 5 or 10 yds in front

(2)

of his front line at point where his trench breaks off from 48 S.

(13) Enemy were averages one row of (continuous) barbed wire along whole of his new line.

Communication. (3) About 9 pm an enemy aeroplane dropped two series of 3 white lights breaking into star clusters over Hooge. No immediate result noticed.

(4) Four searchlights were noticed last night 1 in direction of Meuse and 3 others in general direction of Boeschepe.

Artillery. (1) W hats appears to be a field gun position is visible in old front line at I 25 a 39 the front is covered by wicker screens.

Aircraft. German aeroplane flew very low directly over Mt. Sorrel between 5 and 6 am making 5 circles over it and was possibly taking photographs. Our guns did not fire on it.

Miscellaneous (2) An O.P. is being built tonight in old T 53 Bay T covering our left front.

at night  
14th Dec.

Intelligence Report. 26/6/16.  
14<sup>th</sup> Ban Bn

General Information. Our artillery normal. 14 pdr retaliated in salvoes on request of infantry. Our sappers have located four enemy sapping posts ~~and~~ one of which has been abandoned because of our fire. Stokes gun was effectual in stopping enemy firing rifle grenades near new trench between Canada's trench & Windy corner. Coy officer reports that Stokes gun appeared to make enemy very nervous firing his machine guns very frequently and using numerous flares.

(2) Bn scouts patrolled open ground behind Old Ts 45-46 between 11 pm & 2 am during which time no signs of enemy were observed. Inse way was entered and appears to be in fair condition. 1 W.B.O and 3 bay bombers bombed and drove in enemy wiring party and claim to have caused at least 4 casualties. They followed this up using short stick mills to which enemy replied with numerous rifle grenades but was silenced by Stokes gun.

Enemy activity (3) Artillery fairly active  
(2) Enemy artillery shelled vicinity of Ts 52-53 during morning with 5.9 H.E. also Arragh Wood and vicinity of Battersea Farms. Valley cottages were shelled with about a dozen 3.03 in during day. Our observers were forced to

C.P. in T Co. h. ...

Intelligence Report. 26/6/16.  
14<sup>th</sup> Can Bn

General Information. Our artillery normal. 14 pdr retaliated in salvoes on request of infantry. Our sappers have located four enemy sipping posts ~~at~~ one of which has been abandoned because of our fire. Stokes gun was effectual in stopping enemy firing rifle grenades near new trench between Canada's Bend & Windy Corner. Coy officer reports that Stokes gun appeared to make enemy very nervous firing his machine guns very frequently and using numerous flares.

(2) Bn scouts patrolled open ground behind Old Ts 45-46 between 11 pm & 2 am during which time no signs of enemy were observed. Jesse way was entered and appears to be in fair condition. 1 W.B.O and 3 Coy bombers bombed and drove in enemy sipping party and claim to have caused at least 4 casualties. They followed this up using short stick mills to which enemy replied with numerous rifle grenades but was silenced by Stokes gun.

Enemy Activity (3) Artillery fairly active

(2) Enemy artillery shelled vicinity of Ts 52-53 during morning with 59 H.E. also Arragh Wood and vicinity of Battersea Farms. Valley cottages were shelled with about a dozen 3.03 in during day. Our observers were forced to vacate O.P. in T 52 by enemy shelling.

Enemy Defences. (1) Fresh sandbags and barbed wire seen in front of trench at I 30 b 5.2 to 3.2. Four working parties were seen in vicinity of I 30 c 3.6 driving stakes, shovelling earth, and revetting trenches with waterwork and heavy timber.

Enemy worked hard during night on new front line and wire in front of our old front T 49-48. He is still doing considerable consolidation work opposite T 52-53.

(3) Pumping posts located at I 30 c 2.6 and 2 1/2-6

(4) O.P. located at I 30 c 1.5

Artillery. (2) Bearings taken on enemy balloons from Bu Hqs I 23 c 7.5 read respectively  $139^{\circ} 59'$  and  $7^{\circ}$  true bearing. Two enemy balloons were near St. Eloi were attacked and set on fire by our planes late in the afternoon.

Equipment. (7) 2 Enemy sags at I 30 d 1/2.9 one wearing grey green uniform (apparently machine gunner) and the other wore a dark cap with visor only his head being visible.

Aircraft. Fairly active.

Miscellaneous. Columns of smoke seen at I 30 b 5.0 at 9:30 am considerable movement was also noticed at this point.

Alexander Lt.  
14<sup>th</sup> Div.

## Intelligence Report.

14th Cav Bn.

27/6/16

General Information. (1) Our artillery was very slow in responding to call for retaliation for enemy bombardment but 18 par fire was reported ~~accurate~~ and effective when opened up. At 4.30 pm. 30 rds. 18 par. silenced enemy bombardment of T 51. At 5.15 pm. retaliation was called for on account of enemy shelling Tube and 48 R. 30 rds fired 15 reported as "blind" 40 more rounds fired bay officer reported very good shooting.

(2) Patrol of 5 went out from right B.P. off M & Trench entered old T 47 right and T 46 to Foreway and reports no sign of enemy; This ground was covered twice during night connection being effected with 15 Bn patrol in Foreway both times. \*

Enemy Activity. (1) Attitude quiet with exception of attempted raid already reported on.

(2) Artillery very active all day in our whole area especially in Armagh and Sanctuary Woods, <sup>Int Dorrel</sup> and Observatory Ridge

Enemy Defences. (1) Enemy line on Int. Dorrel after observation appears to be as already reported except that it ~~appears~~ seems to rejoin old German line out right at I 30 c 5.7 instead of 3.7. This will be definitely decided by patrol tonight. Working party was seen at I 30 c 9 1/2 at 2.30 am throwing up sand. At 4 pm party seen at I 30 c 36 working with picks shovels and mallets.

(3) Enemy listening post near our B.P. at I 30 c 6.9h Sniping post located at I 30 a 7.0



(2.)

Communication. (3.) Enemy used light green lights several times during bombardment between 4 am and 5:15 am result not certain but seemed to signal for their artillery to lift.

Artillery. (1.) Appropriate bearing taken on flash of high velocity 5.9 <sup>firing on Hilltop Hill.</sup> gun indicates a position near Ghelevelt probably on railway. Time between flash of gun and explosion of shell about 9-12 seconds

\* Two German were seen at I 30 at 7 1/2 but poor light prevented seeing distinguishing marks. Two enemy were fired on in Canada T. The first shot was hit but result of second shot is uncertain. A sniper on Hill 60 was silenced.

Abel L. L. L.  
14th Per

# Intelligence Report.

14<sup>th</sup> Jan 16.

28/6/16

General Information (1) Our 18 pms were effective in silencing the enemy on three occasions during night at 12.10 am 2.05 am and 3.35 am. Our heavy artillery bombarded enemy lines during day effect not noticeable and our 12" Hows fired during afternoon on Hill 60 but about 25% were blanks. Our bombers repulsed a bombing raid by enemy on our right post ~~was repulsed by~~ at 6 am. Our Lewis gun in T.S. 5 fired on small party of the enemy who were seen <sup>4 am</sup> coming out from hedge from which attack was launched previous day. breaking up the party and nothing more was seen of them.

One enemy sniper was located at 2 pm at I 30 c 7.6 and silenced by our snipers. A man wearing grey cap with blue band was fired on a 6.20 pm at I 30 c 5.6 1/2

(2) Patrol attempted to go out but owing to relief and enemy artillery and bombing activity was unable to accomplish anything.

Enemy Activity (1) Attitude nervous and active.

(2) At 12.10 am enemy opened up a lively bombardment of 77 mm and 4.1" with a few 5.9" and T.M.S. the light guns firing on Valley cottages and vicinity of Bar Hqs Battersa Dam and Zillibekka lasting about 15 mins. This was repeated at 2.05 am with the addition of T.M.S. again lasting about 15 mins.

He again opened up at 3.35 am keeping up an sporadic bombardment until 4.15 am.

Enemy attempted to bomb out our right bombing post at 6 am but was repulsed. In the fire occasional bursts. Sniping active from Hill 60 and also opposite T5 51 and 52 especially at "stand to" in the morning. T.M.S were active in conjunction with artillery during night.

Enemy Defences. (1) See Patrol Report.

Working party seen at I 30 c 3.6 at 4.20 pm shovelling sand. I 29 d 5.6 at 9 am sand being thrown over parapet. Communication trench being repaired at 8.45 am at I 30 d 2 1/2.9

(2) Enemy has a post of about 3 men in sep old Smith Road about 20-25 yds from our B.P.

(4) Two observation boxes seen on the summit.

(13) Examination of enemy wire along his front which lies inside our old front line shows it to consist of 1 row of barbed concertina very heavy.

Communications. (3) Light signals and results as noticed during bombardment preceding attack yesterday morning seem to be as follows:-(a) Single green warns troops and artillery that attack is commencing (b) A double green warns artillery to lift. No effect could be detected for the combined red and green light.

Miscellaneous. (2) O.P. built in old T 53 Bay 1 has been put out of commission by enemy shelling.

"A" Form. *Appendix 7* Army Form C. 2121  
 MESSAGES AND SIGNALS. No. of Message \_\_\_\_\_

Prefix _____	Code _____	m.	Words _____	Charge _____	This message is on a/c of:  Service.	Recd. at _____
Office of Origin and Service Instructions			Sent _____			Date _____
S E C R E T			At _____	m.	(Signature of "Franking Officer.")	From _____
			To _____			By _____
			By _____			

TO 14th and 15th Battalions.

Sender's Number. Day of Month In reply to Number  
 \* B.M. 452 19 AAA

In accordance with 1st Cdn. Division Operation Order No. 60 the 10th Cdn. Battalion will relieve the 14th Battalion in the 2nd G.H.Q. Line to-night. AA Busses will convey the 4th Battalion from Camp "J" (M.3.c) to H.15.c. at which point they will wait to take back the 14th Battalion to Camp J. AAA On the night ~~20th/21st~~ busses will convey the 2nd Cdn. Inf. Bn from Camp "I" (M.3.c) to H.15.c. where they will wait to take back the 15th Battalion to Camp "I" AAA The 2nd Cdn. Battalion will relieve the Company of the 15th Battalion behind HILL 60 and the 5th Cdn. Battalion will relieve the Company of the 15th Battalion in the ZILLEBEKE SWITCH AAA Battalion Commanders of units concerned to mutually arrange details of relief AAA Brigade to be notified when relief is completed AAA Please acknowledge

From 5th C.I.B.

Place \_\_\_\_\_

Time p.m.

The above may be forwarded as now corrected.

(Z) *Malcolm McDerby*  
 Edc. Major

Censor.

Signature of Addressor or person authorized to telegraph in his name.

\* This line should be erased if not required.

(41/2) W. W14042-444. 300000 Pads. 1215. Sir J. C. & S.

Appendix 8

4.30 P.M.29 June 1916

Reference Map,  
1st Canadian Brigade,  
25 June. Scale 1/2500.

The following tasks will be completed on the night of 29 June, 1916, ~~for~~ by the 14th Battalion, prior to relief.

- (1) Our post No. 4. will be pushed forward to old French 48, reestablished in old front French 48 as close to enemy front line as possible.
- (2) Our Post No. 5. will be advanced to enemy bombing post reestablished there.
- (3) Our Post No. 6. will be advanced towards the enemy line, and will endeavour to establish control of the Trench.
- (4) Our Posts 7 + 8 will be pushed forward towards enemy line.
- (5) A post No. 1. if not already established will be established at junction of Trenches 46 + 47.

Great care will be taken to ensure proper ~~re~~ occupation of posts by incoming relief.

Paras. 1 + 2 shall be completed not later than 11.0 P.M.

G. S. Jusford  
Lieutenant General, 3rd Can Bde.

Appendix 8

H. 30 P.M.29 June 1916

Reference Map,  
1st Canadian Brigade,  
25 June. Scale 1/2500.

The following tasks will be completed on the night of 29 June, 1916, ~~from~~ by the 14th Battalion, prior to relief.

- (1) Our post No. 4. will be pushed forward to old French 48, reestablished in old front French 48 as close to enemy front line as possible.
- (2) Our Post No. 5. will be advanced to enemy bombing post reestablished there.
- (3) Our Post No. 6. will be advanced towards the enemy line, and will endeavour to establish control of the Trench.
- (4) Our Posts 7 + 8 will be pushed forward towards enemy line.
- (5) A post No. 1. if not already established will be established at junction of Trenches 46 + 47.

Great care will be taken to ensure proper ~~re~~ occupation of posts by incoming relief.

Paras. 1 + 2 shall be completed not later than 11.0 P.M.

G. S. Jusford  
Lieutenant General, 3rd Can Bde.



No. XBC(1)

Appendix 9

SECRET Copy No. 2

Special Operations

Johnnie Smith

Major R.G. Clark

29 June 16

Command 1st Royal Naval Regt

1. Information Tonight (29/30) as so after dusk as possible, the following minor enterprises will be carried out under your command.

2. Objectives (A) The Bunting Post located in SMITH STREET in No 4 Sap which runs from WINDY CORNER to our old front line in T 48. will be pushed forward.

(i) First Objective. German Bunting Post

(ii) Second Objective. Junction of T 48 and SMITH STREET.

(iii) Third Objective along T 48. left and right, as far as possible towards front line.

(B) The Bunting Post in T 48 (located running from WINDY CORNER to German front line at point D crossing at T 48 S.) will be pushed forward to German Bunting Post.

(C) Both these <sup>new</sup> posts will be established and consolidated and handed over to relieving unit.

3. Command Both these parties will be commanded by an officer detailed by you from your unit names to be submitted to Br H.Q. by wire.

4. Aid Post You will establish an Aid Post in a convenient locality and report same by wire to Br H.Q.

5. Consolidating Parties Personnel for consolidating will be arranged for by yourself.



No. XBC(1)

Appendix 9

SECRET Copy No. 2

Special Operations

Intelligence

W. R. G. Clark

29 June 16

Command 1st Royal Naval Regt

1. Information Tonight (29/30) as so after dusk as possible, the following minor enterprises will be carried out under your command

2. Objectives (A) The Bombing Post located on SMITH STREET in No 4 Sq which runs from WINDY CORNER to our old front line on T 48, will be pushed forward.

(i) First Objective. German Bombing Post

(ii) Second Objective. Junction of T 48 and SMITH STREET

(iii) Third Objective along T 48 left and centre as far as possible towards front line

(B) The Bombing Post on T 48 (located running from WINDY CORNER to German front line at point D crossing at T 48 S.) will be pushed forward to German Bombing Post.

(C) Both these <sup>new</sup> posts will be established and consolidated and handed over to relieving unit

3. Command Both these posts will be commanded by an officer detailed by you from your unit names to be submitted to Br H. D. by wire

4. Aid Post You will establish an Aid Post in a convenient locality and report same by wire to Br H. D.

5. Consolidating Parties Provision for consolidating will be arranged for by yourself

6. Reports Reports will be sent as follows  
First by wire to Br H. Q.  
Second by wire to No 4 Coy H. Q.

7. Acknowledge by wire

issued at 5:45 pm.  
By Rummer

James Utter  
Capt  
Adj. 1st Br

Cop. No 1 to Lt Beeson  
" No 2 " Br H. Q.  
" No 3 " 3rd Bde.

Acknowledge  
—



XBC(2)

appendix D.  
Special Operation Order  
by

Copy No. 2

Date Filed

29<sup>th</sup> June 1916

Walter R. G. Clark

Commandy 1st Royal Montreal Regt

1. Information. In spite of numerous instructions it has not been definitely decided whether Bunting Post marked No 1 at Junction T-46 - T-47 has been established. You will therefore carry out before relief

- (a) By an officer capable establish this post definitely.
- (b) If it is found that this post does NOT exist, one WILL BE established at once and handed over to relieving unit.

2. Reports Reports will be sent in as follows  
First By wire to Bin H.Q.  
Second By runner to 704 Coy H.Q.

J. W. Little Capt  
29<sup>th</sup> 14<sup>th</sup> Div

Issued at 5<sup>th</sup> Regt  
by Rummer

Copy No 1. 1<sup>st</sup> Lt Col Power  
No 2. Bin H.Q.  
No 3. 3<sup>rd</sup> Com Dep'ty

Please acknowledge



## Appendix II

### Reinforcements of Officers received during

June 1916.

Lieutenant	C. H. Sclater.....	June	12th.
Captain	J. C. K. Carson.....	"	17th.
"	J. F. Adams.....	"	"
Lieutenant	G. B. Murray.....	"	18th.
"	W. W. Pickup.....	"	"
"	G. M. Sylvester.....	"	"
"	B. F. Davidson.....	"	"
Captain	E. B. Nelles.....	"	"
"	D. J. Evans.....	"	"
Lieutenant	J. Mills.....	"	"
"	G. T. Bartlett.....	"	"
"	W. L. McCormack.....	"	"
"	O. J. Larzen.....	"	"
"	W. J. Holliday.....	"	"
"	B. L. Cook.....	"	"
"	E. M. Hymen.....	"	"
"	E. A. Adams.....	"	"
"	S. S" Jones.....	"	"

### Non-commissioned Officers, 14th Canadian Battalion, Appointed Temporary Lieutenants June 12th 1916.

-----ooOoo-----

25627,	Act. Q.M.S. A. Plow.
26031,	C.Q.M.S., C. H. Sullivan
26621,	Act. Cpl., A. L. McLean.
25725,	Sergeant, F. K. Higginson.
25913,	" R. H. Hood.
25792,	Act. C.S.M. J. W. Green.
26051,	R.Q.M.S., W. Sharp.



Appendix 12

REPORT ON MINOR OPERATIONS, JUNE 27th, 1916.  
-----

On the morning of June 27th, the 14th Canadian Battalion was occupying Trenches 45 - 52 inclusive.

At 3.40 a.m. the Germans opened fire with Trench Mortars and small shells, the fire gradually increasing in intensity until at 4.02 a.m. the bombardment was extremely heavy.

At 4.04 a.m. the enemy commenced putting a barrage of fire in front of the position occupied by No. 3 Company in support, and at 4.10 a.m. put a similar barrage in rear of Battalion Headquarters at BATTERSEA FARM.

In addition to these barrages the surrounding country was searched by enemy shell fire.

The Battalion on our left, the 13th Battalion, were also heavily shelled, and at this time No. 1 Company sent up an S.O.S. rocket. By this time our light artillery was firing and seemed effective. At about 4.20 a.m. the enemy advanced immediately on our left flank, where the 13th Battalion trenches were badly smashed. Captain J. F. ADAMS, No. 2 Company, immediately rushed a platoon under Captain D. J. EVANS to assist the 13th and remain there until further orders.

Corporal Fletcher enfiladed the advancing troops with the Lewis Gun and the raid was repulsed leaving one prisoner, of the 126 Wurtemburger Regiment, behind. This prisoner was badly wounded and was attended to by our Medical Officer, Captain W. J. McAlister, M.C.,

The bombardment continued by both sides after the attack was repulsed with a varying degree of intensity, our heavy artillery having by this time joined in. The enemy were now using 5.9 shells, high explosive,

At 5.13 a.m. the bombardment had practically ceased and at 5.16 am all was quiet again. Sniping was very active on both sides during the balance of the day.

Captain J. F. Adams, Captain D. J. Evans, C. S. M., E. Cowen, Sergeant Miller, Machine Gun, and Corporal Fletcher, Machine Gun, did excellent work while the operation lasted.

Our casualties in the operation were, ~~14~~ killed, 13 wounded.

*1 O.R. died of wounds*  
*1 Officer Lt. J. Mills killed*





## Appendix 13

### REFERENCE MONOR OPERATIONS night of JUNE 29/30th.

---

No. 1 Post. Lieutenant R. H. Hood and Sergeant J. W. Hoare proceeded at dusk to establish this Post and they are of the opinion that they established it at the Junction of 46 -47 as shown in map. This opinion is also shared by Lieutenant C. G. Power lately our Intelligence Officer.

While this is not correct in my own opinion the fact remains that this Officer and N.C.O. carried out their order, (X.B.C.(2)), to the best of their knowledge and ability, and when the position was pointed out to me it was much too late for any further post to be established (1.15 a.m. 30th inst.).

The enemy that they report having seen on their way to this position, were in the German front line trench, which they state to be fully manned.

-----ooOoo-----

No. 4 Post. Owing to the light it was not possible to start this attack until 10.45 p.m. and even then it was not sufficiently dark. While the assaulting party together with the consolidating party were forming up in Smith's Road, their presence was discovered by the enemy in his bombing post in that trench, who promptly opened fire on them. As surprise was to be the principal element in this attack, it was necessary for me to change my plans immediately. I therefore ordered the Bombers to proceed to Halifax Trench and ~~at~~ attack the German Bombing Post in Smith's Road from that flank.

A very large number of flares were continuously being sent up by the Germans, and the attacking party under Sergeant Hoare was also discovered and the enemy commenced to throw bombs at them. Our Bombers, however, pushed on and replied vigorously, throwing altogether upwards of 100 bombs. The Bombing Post called Isolated Post, along trench 48 between Halifax and Smith's Road, co-operated energetically and threw about 80 Bombs.

The Bombers also in No. 3 Post advanced across the open and threw 30 to 40 Bombs. Their throwing appeared to be very good and I have no doubt must have caused many casualties.

The enemy retaliated heavily, but luckily we escaped with no serious casualties, the bombs almost invariably going over the heads and beyond the attacking parties.

On Sergeant Hoare returning to the trench to get a fresh supply of bombs he reported to me that the German trench was heavily held (10 or 12 men) with others in the communication trench leading into it, and that any casualties we had caused were evidently being replaced immediately.

At this time also, our front line trench, which was within bombing range, was closely packed with the relieving Battalion (the 8th) and it was impossible to move in any direction except over the open, and any bombs landing in our trench would have caused very heavy casualties. Our attack had also lost all the elements of surprise and was evidently being repelled in force.

Taking these facts into consideration I ordered the Bombers to cease firing and the parties to withdraw to their Posts.

-----ooOoo-----

No. 5 Post, 488. At the same time as the above Post operation was taking place the bombers in this Post attacked the German Post opposite them. They threw 18 Bombs and in retaliation received only 4. Corporal Parker was in charge and it is his opinion that casualties were caused. The wire between the Posts was also destroyed.

-----ooOoo-----

No. 9 Post. This Post was advanced from its old location approximately 20 yards towards the enemy's lines and to our left front.

-----ooOoo-----

The other Posts were sapped forward under a covering party as per instructions.

*Certified Copy of  
Lt. Col. R. P. Clark's report  
Arthur Law  
Lieut. and Asst.  
14th Ban. Ptn.*



*Appendix 14*  
Special Operation Order.  
by  
Lt.Col.R.P.CLARKE, cmdg. 14th Can.Bn.  
-----

SECRET.

1. Information. At 2 a.m. on the 29th inst. the 14th Bn. will attack and take the enemy's trench opposite our own front, MOUNT SORREL.
2. Objective. The objective will be as shown in attached map, (German 1st and 2nd lines from I.30.c, 6.8. to I.30.b,  $\frac{1}{2}$ . $\frac{3}{4}$ ) and marked in RED or if this line is not exactly as shown the nearest enemy's trench will become the objective.
3. Artillery. Artillery preparation will be of TWO kinds  
(a) Deliberate and heavy bombardment of selected points and enemy's trench to the rear of and on both flanks of Objective.  
(b) At 1.50 a.m. an intense shrapnel bombardment of 10 minutes duration of the Objective.
4. Assault. At 2 a.m. bombardment (b) vide para 3(b) will lift and the attack will be launched. The assault will be delivered by FIVE assaulting columns simultaneously, to their objectives and on arriving there they will garrison and with the assistance of the C.R. will consolidate.
5. ASSAULTING parties. The assaulting parties will be numbered 1 to 5 and be respectively advance along routes to their objectives, so numbered.
6. Distribution. Each assaulting Column will consist of  
(a) 1 officer.  
(b) Bombing party of 8. (1 thrower, 1 helper, 2 bayonet men, 2 carriers, 2 spare men).  
(c) Holding squad of 2 n.c.os. and 12 men.  
(d) Engineering party of 3 sappers, 3 n.c.os. and 35 men.  
(e) Reserve of 4 bombers, 3 n.c.os. and 12 men (riflemen).  
NOTE. Reserve parties will not advance with the assaulting column until required.
7. Command. These parties will be designated and commanded as follows:-  
No.1. Capt.EVANS. ) Right assaulting columns. Officer in command  
No.2. Lt.SULLIVAN. )  
No.3. Lt.PICKUP ) Left assaulting columns. Officer in command  
No.4. Lt.HYMAN )  
No.5. Lt.MURRAY ) Major McCOMBE.
8. Equipment. The equipment of each party will be as follows:-  
(a) Each assaulting column, 2 flags, 3 rockets.  
(b) Bombers, except throwers..... Mills grenades.  
(c) Each rifleman 170 rounds S.A.A. 4 Mills grenades, 4 sandbags every 4th man to carry a shovel.  
(d) Bayonet men. Officers.  
50% rifleman to carry wire cutters.  
(e) Everybody to carry filled water bottles and four biscuits.
9. Machine guns. 2 Lewis guns will go forward with assaulting columns No.4 and 2. under instructions of Major McCOMBE and Capt.ADAMS.
10. Instructions. The officers in command of each of the 5 assaulting columns will carefully explain to every one of his party the objectives and all the necessary available information.
11. Aid Posts. Advance Aid posts will be established in 48 R. No.2 coy. will detail 1/2 O.R. to report to M.O. at midnight 28/29 June at VALLEY COTTAGES.

(2).

12. Identifications. All ranks taking part in assault will blacken their faces with burnt cork and remove all identification marks, including letters, documents and badges which will be handed over to C.S.Ms. for safe keeping.
13. Reports. Reports to No.4 coy. H.Q. O'GRADY WALK.

*W. H. O'Grady*  
Lt.

Captain,  
Adj. 14th Bn.

*Operation not carried out.*

CONFIDENTIAL  
WAR DIARY  
OF  
14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION  
JULY 1916.  
WITH APPENDICES 1 to 5.  
VOLUME 16 - 7.

WAR DIARY

14th Canadian Bn. 1st Canadian Division,

from 1st to 31st July, 1916.

Volume 17.

Diary Text

4 Pages.

Appendix I

Syllabus of training from July 1st to July 6th

" 2

Training syllabus July 7th.

" 3

O.O. No. 59 dated the 9th July, 14th to relieve  
28th Cdn. Bn. on July 9th and 10th.

" 4

O.O. No. 60 dated the 18th July, 14th Bn. to be  
relieved in close support by the 10th Cdn. Bn. on  
July 19th and 20th.

" 5

Intelligence report from the 10th to 14th July.



14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR

DIARY

JULY

1916.

TEXT.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

 OR  
 INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

Page 1.

(Erase heading not required.)

July 1916.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
BRIGADE RESERVE	1		Battalion in Brigade Reserve, DOMINION LINES. Muster Parade. Weather very uncertain. Syllabus of Training attached. A1	A1
"	2		Battalion in Brigade Reserve. Weather very fine. Syllabus of Training attached. A1	A1
"	3		Battalion in Brigade Reserve. Syllabus of Training attached. A1	A1
"	4		Battalion in Brigade Reserve. Moved into Divisional Reserve at PATRICIA LINES. Band of 2nd Brigade Marched Battalion to Divisional Headquarters.	A1
DIVISIONAL RESERVE	5		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Fine weather. Syllabus of Training attached. A1.	A1
"	6		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Fine weather. Syllabus of Training attached. A1.	A1
"	7		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Fine weather. Syllabus of Training attached. A2.	A2
"	8		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Fine weather. Syllabus of Training attached. A2. Major-General A. W. Currie, C.B., G.O.C. 1st Canadian Division visited Camp. Captain M. C. W. Copeland reinforcement. A	A2
"	9		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Very fine day. Battalion moved into trenches 3* to 38 inclusive, between the "BLUFF" and "RAILWAY CUTTING" Lieutenant G. L. Stairs, a former Officer of this Battalion, and Lieutenant J. F. Fitzpatrick arrived as reinforcements.	Operation Order 59.
TRENCHES.	10		Battalion in the trenches. Situation extremely quiet. Wind light West. 1 O.R. killed, Captain D. J. Evans and 2 O.R. wounded.	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

 or  
 INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

Page 2.

(Erase heading not required.)

July 1916.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
TRENCHES	11		Battalion in trenches. One O. R. sent to represent 14th Battalion in Paris Review. Situation Normal. Lively rifle grenading between 10 p.m. and midnight by both sides. Snipers, and Machine Guns normal. Wind. Light West. 3 O.R. wounded.	
"	12		Battalion in trenches. Situation very quiet except in the morning when rifle grenade activity occurred. Wind W.S.W. Light. later S. 11 O.R. wound d. Gas Alert.	
"	13		Battalion in trenches. Gas Alert cancelled. Great activity in Rifle grenades and Trench mortars on both sides in the early morning. Desultory artillery fire during the afternoon. Wind W.S.W. 3 O.R. Killed, 7 O.R. Wounded. Lieutenant W.W. Pickup and Lieutenant E.A. Adams wounded. Carrying party of 1 Officer and 35 O.R. furnished.	
"	14		Battalion in trenches. Situation very quiet, no activity what-ever Wind N.N.W. 14th Canadian Battalion relieved by 13th Canadian Battalion, 14th Battalion moved to close support:- Headquarters, RAILWAY DUGOUTS; No. 1 Company, CANAL DUG-OUTS; No. 2 Company, BATTERSEA FARM, No. 3 Company, WOODCOTE HOUSE; No. 4 Comapny, SUNKEN ROAD. 2 O.R. wounded. Working parties totalling 3 Officers and 323 other ranks furnished.	
BRIGADE SUPPORT	15		Battalion in Brigade Support. Weather Fair. Working Parties totalling 7 Officers and 488 other ranks furnished.	
"	16		Battalion in Brigade Support. Weather bright and very warm. Working Parties Totalling 9 Officers and 488 other ranks furnished.	
"	17		Battalion in Brigade Support. Slight fall of rain otherwise fair weather. Working parties totalling 9 Officers and 488 other ranks furnished.	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

 or  
 INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

Page 3

(Erase heading not required.)

July 1916.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
BRIGADE SUPPORT	18		Battalion in Brigade Support. Very fine day. Working parties totalling 9 Officers and 499 other ranks furnished.	
"	19		Battalion in Brigade Support. Fine Day. German aeroplane crossed overhead about dusk dropping three bombs in the vicinity of Headquarters. Working Parties totalling 3 Officers and 138 other ranks furnished. 14th Canadian Battalion relieved by 10th Canadian Battalion. 14th Battalion moved into Brigade Reserve at DICKEBUSCH PUTS.	Operation Order 60
BRIGADE RESERVE	20		Battalion in Brigade Reserve. Very fine day. Battalion resting in morning. Kit inspection in the afternoon. Working Party of 200 other ranks exclusive of proportionate number of N.C.O's. and Officers for work on 2nd G.H.Q. Lines.	
"	21		Battalion in Brigade Reserve. Fine Day. Gas Demonstration and Inspection of Gas Helmets by Divisional Gas Officer. Lecture on the "Use of the Bayonet," by Lieutenant Betts, Gymnastic Headquarters Staff, attended by 50 O.R. per Company & 50 O.R. from Details and all available Officers. Battalion moved to PATRICIA LINES at 7 p.m.	
DIVISIONAL RESERVE.	22		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Wet day until noon, fine afternoon and evening. Lecture on "Aeroplane Observation" to Officers and 50 O.R. by Major Mills of R.F.C. at Comnaught Lines. Bathing Parade. Muster Parade of 2wo Companies and details.	
"	23		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Cloudy morning. Baseball Match in the after noon, 14th Canadian Battalion versus 1st D. A. C. Captain W.J. McAllister and Lieutenant W. E. Beaton awarded the Military Cross. Capt. in C. E. Anderson joined Battalion as Medical Officer to replace Captain McAllister.	
"	24		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Lecture to Officers on "Responsibilities and Duties of Officers" by Lieutenant-Colonel R. H. Kearsley, D.S.O. 1st Divisional Staff. Fair Day. Captain W.J. McAllister left Battalion.	

14<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion

WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

July 1916.

Page 4.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
DIVISIONAL RESERVE	25		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Working Party of 52 other ranks to work at Connaught Lines. Lecture to Officers on "Co-operation between Field Artillery and Infantry". Dull Day.	
"	26		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Working Party of 31 other ranks furnished. 14th Canadian Battalion versus 10th Field Ambulance at Football. Lecture to Officers on "Intelligence of the area which we occupy". Bright day.	
"	27		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Battalion Field Day. Sports in the afternoon, Bands of 2nd Brigade and 15th Battalion present. Concert in the evening. Working party of 52 O.R. very successful day and fine weather.	
"	28		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Bathing Parade. Very hot day.	
"	29		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Battalion parade in full marching order for inspection by Lieut.-Col. R. H. Kearsley. Very hot day. 20 O.R. draft received.	
"	30		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. Church Parade in morning. Remainder of day free. Very warm day.	
"	31		Battalion in Divisional Reserve. <del>Battalion took over trenches 35 to 38 inclusive between the "BLISS" and "BARTON" positions.</del>	

*R. W. Clark*

Lieut.-Colonel,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion.

*[Handwritten notes and signatures in the right margin, including "Operational orders"]*

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR

DIARY

JULY 1916.

APPENDICES 1 to 5.



R.I.

*Appendix 1*  
14th CANADIAN BATTALION.  
ROYAL MONTREAL REGIMENT.  
-----

Syllabus of Training from July 1st to 6th 1916.

ROUTINE.  
-----

Reveille.....6.30 a.m.  
Physical Drill.....6.45 a.m. to 7.15 a.m.  
Breakfast.....7.30 a.m.  
Lights Out.....10.00 p.m.

Parades and Training.

Saturday, July 1st.

Muster Parade. "Clean Up Day". Kit Inspection, indenting and making up deficiencies.

Sunday, July 2nd.

Church Parade 9 a.m. and 10 a.m.

Monday July 3rd.

No. 1 Coy. Musketry on Range 9 to 11 a.m. Sections and Coy Drill 11.30 a.m. to 12 Noon.

No. 2 Coy. Section and Coy. Drill 9 to 10 a.m. Musketry on Range 11 a.m. to 12 noon.

Nos. 3 and 4 Companies Bombing practices and lectures. Rapid Loading with dummies etc. 9 am to 11.30 a.m.

8 p.m. O. C. Lecture to Officers on the "Strategy of Great Offensives."

Tuesday July 4th.

No. 1 and 2 Coys. Bombing Practice and lectures. Section and Coy. Drill 9 a.m. to 11.30 a.m.

Nos. 3 and 4 Coys. Bathing Parades 9 a.m. to 12 noon.

Nos. 1 and 2 Coys. Bathing Parades 1.30 to 4.30 p.m.

Nos 3 and 4 Coys. Musketry on Range.

Wednesday July 5th.

Nos. 3 and 4 Coys. Bombing platoons practiced throwing live Bombs 9 a.m. to 11.30 a.m.

All Companies 9 a.m. to 9.45 a.m. Company Drill.

Battalion Paraded 10 a.m. to 11 a.m. Instruction and Demonstration in Guard Mounting. Lecture by Captain F.W. Utton on Saluting and Paying compliments to Officers of Allies Armies, discipline and Conduct.

11 to 11.30 a.m. Inspection and Drill. Arm Drill in Detail. Bayonet Exercise.

No. 4 Company. one-half Company, at Musketry on range 11 a.m. to 2 p.m.

Nos. 1 and 2 Coys Bombing platoons practiced in throwing live bombs 2 to 4 p.m.

Thursday July 6th.

All Companies 9.30 to 10.30 a.m. Arm Drill and Coy. Drill in smoke helmets.



Thursday July 6th (cont'd)

10.30 to 11.30 a.m. Musketry, Definition of Targets. Judging Distance. Sighting errors and corrections. Practice with smoke helmets.

2 p.m. Every available Officer, N.C.O. and man attended lecture on "Physical Training," at CONNAUGHT LINES.

4 p.m. 4 Officers and 80 O.R. to attend Divisional Grenade School.

5 p.m. Machine Gun Detail and attached men attend range at Divisional Grenade School.

8 p.m. Lecture to Officers "Operation Orders and March Tables" by Lieut.-Col R.P. Clark Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion.

Training of Details.

Practice in visual signalling and with the buzzer, has been carried on daily by those signallers not on other duty.

Machine Gun Battery have been carrying on practice with Lewis Gun, and have been instructing 20 O.R. - 5 from each Company in this Gun.

Bombers have been fully occupied in training Companies. Intelligence Section and Snipers, Practice in map-reading and scouting. In addition 3 O.R. from each Company have been attached to Snipers for instruction.

(signed) Fred. W. Utton

Captain and Adjutant,  
14th Canadian Battalion.



A.2.

Appendix 2.  
TRAINING SYLLABUS

Friday July 7th 1916.

All Companies Friday July 7th

6.45 am to 7.15 am Physical Training.

9.30 am to 11.30 am Bayonet Fighting

By squads. - Company and platoon commanders will supervise and lecture at their discretion.

Company Commanders will detail 20 O.R. and one Officer per Company to parade at 10.30 am under senior Officer for training at Divisional Grenade School. Battalion Bombers will provide eight instructors to accompany this party. Haversack rations will be carried.

5 P.M. Machine Gun detail and all attached men will practice on Lewis Gun range at Divisional Grenade School. All Officers will attend.

Saturday July 8th

6.45 am to 7.15 am Physical Training

9.30 am to 11.30 am All Companies in assault with bombers  
Lecture by O.C. Companies on "Taking a trench" with instruction to various details as to their tasks and the organization of storming parties.

Sunday July 9th

All Companies will detail 20 O.R. to parade at 7.15 am under senior officer for instruction at Divisional Grenade School. Eight instructors from Battalion Bombers will attend. All Officers will attend Divisional Grenade School at 10.00 am for bombing practice.

Monday July 10th

All Companies

6.45 am to 7.15 am Physical Drill

Battalion Parade 10.00 am for inspection by O.C. -afterwards parade at the disposal of Captain Utton.

11.30 am to 12.00pm Battalion in attack. Machine Gun Detail and attached men will have use of Lewis Gun Range after O.C.'s inspection

All details will carry on training under their respective commanders.

*Arthur Law*  
Lieut. Asst. Adj.  
17th Cant. Bn.



*Appendix 3*  
OPERATION ORDER, No. 59.

SECRET.

by  
Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

Secret.

In the Field,  
July 9th 1916.

Reference Sheet 28, 1/40000.

**Information. 1.** The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will relieve the 28th CANADIAN BATTALION in trenches 33 to 38, (inclusive), supporting points and defended localities on the night of July 9/10 ~~July~~.

**Departure & Transportation 2.** The Battalion will fall in at PATRICIA LINES at ~~8.45~~ <sup>8.00</sup> p.m. and march to POPERINGHE Railway Station, entraining there for H.12.a.2.C. from which point they will proceed independently to their positions.

**Distribution 3.** The Distribution will be as follows:-

No. 4 Company, Trenches, 33, 33S, 34, 34S  
No. 3 Company, " ~~34~~, 35, 35S. PART OF 34S  
No. 2 Company, " 36, 36S, 37.  
No. 1 Company, " 37S, 38, 38S.  
Bombers, PETTICOAT LANE, DUMP, DEANGATE.  
Headquarters - ~~SUNKEN~~ FLEET STREET.  
*G-RAND*

4. Junction between 1st and 2nd CANADIAN DIVISIONS is from junction of trenches 32 and 33 to GUNNERS' LODGE, (I.26.b.9.1) and thence along old boundary.

Guides.

5. Guides, one for each Platoon, 3 for Bombers, one for each Machine Gun Crew, two for Headquarters, one for Dressing Station, will meet 14th BATTALION at SUNKEN ROAD DUG-OUTS at 11 p.m. These guides to be furnished by 28th BATTALION.

Advance Party.

6. Advance Party will leave PATRICIA LINES by two busses at 4.30 p.m. sharp this date, as follows:-

Commanding Officer and Second in Command.  
Two Officers per Company and 1 N.C.O. per Platoon.  
Bombers - One Officer and ~~TWO~~ <sup>ONE</sup> O. R.  
Machine Gunners - ~~ONE~~ <sup>ONE</sup> O. R. for each Machine Gun Position.  
Headquarters - Regimental Sergeant Major, and Officers' Mess Sergeant.  
Signallers - One O. R. for each Station.  
Medical - Two O. R. for Dressing Station.  
Intelligence, Scouts, Snipers, Observers - <sup>SCOUT OFFICER</sup> (One O. R. each.

This party will divide into small groups of not more than five, and proceed at intervals and by different routes, to their respective destinations.

Valises.

7. Packs will not be taken into the trenches, but will be handed over to the C.Q.M.S. at 2.30 p.m. today. Service caps to be placed inside packs. Old clothing to be worn into trenches and new clothing to be placed in packs, in the cases of those men possessing extra garments. (Vide Battalion Order No. 783, Trench Orders, dated 8/7/16.

Code.

8. Code word for relief on night of 9/10th July is "ANCRE."

Defence Schemes.

9. All Maps, Photos, Papers, Defence Schemes, etc., will be taken over by 14th BATTALION from outgoing unit. BATTALION HEADQUARTERS must be advised by runner what documents have actually been taken over.

P.T.O.

- Brigade.  
Bugle-Band. 10. The Bugle Band will detail four runners to report at  
-Runners. -- BRIGADE HEADQUARTERS, BEDFORD HOUSE, on night of relief. These men to remain there as runners during tour. Quartermaster to send their rations separately each night to Battalion Sergeant Major.
- Battalion Runners. 11. Each Company to detail two men as runners at BATTALION HEADQUARTERS, Smart, intelligent Orderlies with previous experience. Quartermaster to send these rations separately each night to Battalion Sergeant Major.
- Details. 12. Signallers and Stretcher Bearers will parade with the units to which they are attached for duty.
- Equipment. 13. Each N.C.O. and man will carry one Mills Grenade and six sand-bags. Company and Unit Commanders will personally ensure that each man thoroughly understands the working of the grenade.
- Officers' Kit 14. Officers' Kits to be stored at Quartermaster's Stores must be ready for removal, and placed near Guard-Room at 3.00 p.m. today.
- Horses. 15. Transport Officer to have Officers' horses at PATRICIA LINES for the march to POPERINGHE STATION. One G. S. Limber wagon for Orderly Room effects at 7 p.m. One G. S. Wagon for Headquarters Officers and Mess at 7.00 p.m.
- Orderly Room 16. Orderly Room will be established at the Transport DOMINION LINES.
- Sanitation. 17. The present Camp must be left scrupulously clean and same will be inspected by the Adjutant, Orderly Officer and Medical Officer at 6.15 p.m.
- Precaution. 18. Unit Commanders will take precautions to reduce the possibility of casualties during relief, exercising particular care when crossing exposed ground.
19. Unit Commanders will ascertain what work is being done in their area and must carry on the morning after relief.
- Working Parties 20. The advance party must check over trench stores, equipment, etc. very carefully.
- Trench Stores. 21. As little conversation as possible to take place over the telephones owing to the danger of being overheard by the enemy. Messages that may be of the slightest importance to the enemy must be conveyed by runner. Code word for Battalion Headquarters is "JACK".
22. After these orders are thoroughly understood and the necessary extracts, if any, taken, the Orders must be destroyed.
- Disposition. 23. Company Commanders must send accurate disposition reports to Battalion Headquarters as soon as possible after relief, by runner only. They will also inform Battalion Headquarters by wire as soon as they arrive in trench.

*Reprints*  
*Disposition*  
24 Acknowledge

*Lead with copy*  
*Ady*



by  
Lieut Colonel R. P. Clark,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

-----000-----

Field July 18th 1916

Reliefs

1. The 14th Canadian Battalion will be relieved in close support on the night of July 19/20 by the 10th Canadian Battalion and will move into Brigade Support, Dickebusch Huts, H.26.B.Central.

Reliefs

2. Reliefs to be reported to Battalion Headquarters by use of Code Word "Kamloops" only, and permission to be obtained before moving out. Units to proceed independently to new camp.

Precautionary Measures

3. Unit Commanders will take all possible precautions to avoid any casualties during the relief, and exercise great care, particularly when crossing open ground.

Documents

4. All maps, plans, photographs, papers etc., relating to the area, details of work, schemes for dug outs etc., will be handed over to the relieving unit.

Receipts

5. Receipts for above, also for sanitary conditions, to be obtained in triplicate and handed to Orderly Room by 12 Noon July 20.

Billeting

6. Billeting Officer ----- Quartermaster *Lynmaster*. Part of, One Officer per Company, One N.C.O. per platoon, one N.C.O. for Machine Gun Section, Lieut R.H. Hood for Headquarters, and four scouts for other Details, will meet on road beyond Cafe Belge, on the road to Dickebusch not later than 3 p.m. July 19th leaving their present position and proceeding independently. They will have in their possession accurate figures of the number they require accommodation for. They are to meet their units near Dickebusch Huts and guide them to their portion of the camp.

Meals

7. Quartermaster to have hot tea ready for troops upon their arrival in camp; the travelling kitchens serving as follows,

No 1 Company	Machine Gun Section
No 2 Company	Bombers
No 3 Company	Intelligence and all stretcher bearers
No 4 Company	All other Details.

Transport

8. Transport Officer to have Officers' kits and all other articles necessary, at the camp, and to transport Headquarters effects, Company and Units cooking utensils etc., from present positions.

Reports

9. Unit Commanders must report to Headquarters upon arrival in camp, reporting casualties stragglers etc. if any

Issued at

11 am. July 19

*Arthur Shaw*  
Lieut and Adjt.,  
14th Canadian Battalion.

Copy No 1 to No 1 Company  
" 2 " 2 "  
" 3 " 3 "  
" 4 " 4 "  
" 5 "Reg. Sgt. Major and Details  
" 6 to Quartermaster  
" 7 to Orderly Room  
" 8 to 3rd C.I.B.  
" 9 War Diary  
" 10 War Diary





Appendix 5  
Intelligence Report  
14<sup>th</sup> Cav Bn

10/7/16

General Information (1) Our artillery very quiet in this sector during past 24 hours. Very little bombing activity until tonight when we retaliated for enemy's rifle grenades with rifle grenades, Stickers and 2 in T.M.S. with effect. M.G. normal, occasional bursts of fire during night. Sniping. One of snipers fired on a German sniper and he was seen to sway and fall forward from his position. Patrol went out on our left front and reported no signs of enemy patrol. Our wire is poor and needs attention.

Enemy's Activity. (1) Quiet.

(2) at 7:15 am enemy fired 45 4.1" shells in vicinity of Verbrandenmoes. M.G. short bursts of fire occasionally during night. Sniping, moderate.

Enemy's Defences. (1) Enemy seen throwing earth over parapets and carrying timber at 9:20 am. Location I 29 c 8.  $\frac{3}{4}$  I 34 b 5  $\frac{1}{2}$ . Mallet being used to drive stakes at 4:05 pm

(3) Sniping post located at I 34 b 5:1

(4) I 35 a 5:7 and I 35 a 6:8 Two portable

observation boxes were seen to take up these positions

in enemy front line. Another was seen at I 34 b 5:1 and was fired on by sniper and put out of action.

5. Suspected M.G.E at I 35 a 6:  $\frac{7}{8}$

13. Enemy wire seems uniformly strong majority close to parapet and composed of heavy concertina barbed wire.

Enemy Movement & Organization. (1) Wind vane on parapet at I 35 c 8.  $\frac{5}{8}$  and small sticks about 12" high stuck into parapet from which hang small ribbons evidently wind

vanes also.

Aircraft Movement. Two enemy planes were flying low over our area about 7:15 am during firing on Verbrandenmolen possibly observing same. At 8:30 pm enemy plane flew over our line from direction of Hill 60 as far as the Bluff turning back in direction of Ypres heavily shelled by our AA guns.

Miscellaneous. Two O.P. & S.P.s are under construction and will likely be in use tomorrow.

Walter Keane  
Lt.  
14<sup>th</sup> Can Bn

# Intelligence Report.

14<sup>th</sup> Cav Bn.

8 pm 10<sup>th</sup> to

8 pm 11<sup>th</sup> July/16

General Information. (1) 18 pars retaliated during last evening for enemy rifle grenade activity. Otherwise quiet. We fired 92 Newton R.Gs and 25 No 20 R.Gs in retaliation for enemy rifle grenades between 8 and 10 pm 10<sup>th</sup> inst. M.G. normal. <sup>4:30 pm</sup> Small working party seen at I 34 b 8.2 repairing damage caused by our T.M.s. Party dispersed by snipers, result ~~unknown~~ uncertain. Sniping post at bottom of parapet at I 29 c 8.1 silenced by snipers at 6 am. At 3:20 pm same location one of our snipers exchanged nine shots with enemy sniper, result uncertain. Sniper located and killed at I 34 b 7.2 June 4:10 pm. 2 in T.M.s fired 23 rounds in reply to enemy "strafe" between 8 and 10 pm.

(2) Patrol of 1 officer (Mr Hood) and 4 O.P.s went over ground in front of T.s 34-35 & 36 and report wire improved with exception of right of T 35. No signs of enemy patrols.

Enemy Activity. (1) Attitude alert.

(2) 14 whizzbang H.E. and sprague landed near support line last evening one damaging parapet of Diagonal T. Enemy commenced bombardment of R.G.s, T.M.s and Fish tail banks about 8 pm last night mostly in vicinity of T 36. Bursts of M.G. fire sweeping parapet during night. Sniping less active. T.M.s as above.

Enemy Defences. (1) At 9:05 pm about I 35 a 5.6 3/4 a noise like dropping of timbers was heard.

(3) Snipers pierced a number of enemy plates and also smashed several periscopes.

(5) M.G. emplacement at I 34 b 8.2 identified by flashes last night. Another gun firing a burst from opposite T 34 was suddenly silenced by Stokes gun shell which appeared to burst

directly on top of it. No more M.C. activity has been noticed here since. Possible M.C.E. at I 35c 8.5 oblong slit about 3 or 4 ft by about 6 in.

Enemy Movement and Organization. (1) Tramway from I 40 to I 35 a 8.5 appears to be used considerably by enemy.

Communications. (3) About I 35 c 5.8 alternate red and green lamp flashes were seen at 1.30 am. Enemy aeroplane dropped four or five white lights in vicinity of the "Bluff" about 10.30 pm last night aircraft movement. Enemy planes active in morning and evening over our sector.

Whitehead  
14th Div.

W.M.

# Intelligence Report.

12<sup>th</sup> July 1966

14<sup>th</sup> Ban Bw.

General Information. (1) 18 pdr battery fired about 20 salvos in retaliation between 8 and 10 pm last night. We fired about 200 rifle grenades during night in retaliation for enemy bombing. <sup>(see note)</sup> M.G. ~~was~~ <sup>was</sup> fired at 15' fired on at 5.15 am at I 35 a 6.2 by snipers. They took cover immediately. Two men at I 35 b 1.2 fired at by snipers when they took cover in undergrowth. What ~~was~~ <sup>appeared</sup> ~~was~~ <sup>was</sup> suspected to be an officer using binoculars at I 35 a 5.7 was forced to take cover by our snipers. At I 35 a 8.8 snipers knocked down a windvane and immediately after a shovel was held up signalling a bull. Sniper claims to have located and killed an enemy sniper at I 34 b 9.2. Our T.M.S fired about 20 rounds during evening and Stokes guns about the same, the latter appeared more accurate.

(2) Between 11.30 pm and 1.15 am patrol of 1 officer 1 pl 3 scouts patrolled ground from height of T 33 to centre T 35. Listening posts in T 35-36 and 37 were also visited and reported all quiet. No signs of enemy.

(3) Carrying party of 15 men seen at 7.5 am wore dark trousers and light coats or shirts, possibly belong to navy bn.

Enemy Activity. (1) altitude alert.

(2) Between 8 and 10 pm enemy fired a few rounds light shrapnel back of our supports 36-37. Enemy fired numerous rifle grenades, fish tail T.M.S and large aerial torpedoes near front and support lines between 8 and 10 pm last night. <sup>early this</sup> morning he fired about 50 rifle grenades in T 3 and 36. M.G. active during night. Sniping considered reduced since we came in. Patrol out.

Enemy's Defences. (1) a pile of fresh earth is visible

front of barbed wire at I 35 a 5.7. Party of 15 carrying long timbers seen at I 35 a 6.2 were dispersed by our snipers.

(7) A screen of wirework is visible at (I 35 a 6.2)

(I 35 a 6.2) (5) Suspected M.G. E at I 35 b 1.2 is at present being worked upon.

Enemy movements etc. (1) There appears to be a path or track from about I 35 central to I 35 a 9.4 on which movement can frequently be noticed.

(5) At I 35 a 5 1/2 a large brown dog was at 4.45 am. Shortly after at same place a party of 10 were seen ~~at~~ wearing grey trousers and without tunic apparently wearing undershirt only. At I 35 b 1.1 two men wearing forage caps with red bands were seen walking around occasionally stooping to pick up something from the ground. They appeared to have black leather cases about 9 in by 4 in slung across backs. They were forced to take cover by our snipers. At 6.25 am four men passed behind screen mentioned above.

Communication. About I 35 a 6.5 a pigeon was seen to rise ~~from~~ fly in an easterly direction.

(4) A powerful searchlight was active last night apparently in direction of aircraft movement. Enemy planes active at even and during night over our trenches. Flew very low about dusk.

Miscellaneous. (2) O.P. under construction at I 34 b 4 1/2 and I 34 b 2 1/2. O.P. at I 35 a 1 1/4 improved.

Note. Our M.G. dispersed party <sup>about 20</sup> working on wire in front of T 37 and also reduced night sniping considerably.

Arthur Henry  
14th Jan 41.

# Intelligence Report

14<sup>th</sup> Ban Bar.

13<sup>th</sup> July/16

General Information. (1) Our 18 pdrs were prompt in retaliating for enemy bombing and field gun activity firing about 100 rds during night. We fired 176 R.Gs. in bombing engagement with enemy between 3 to 5 am and again later in morning. M.G used indirect fire on road I 38 a 1.8 from Grand Fleet St. position in early evening. Our M.Gs in front line were active in replying and keeping down enemy M.G and rifle fire during night. Lewis gun successfully fired on working party opposite T 37. An enemy sniper was silenced by our snipers at I 35 a 5.3. Snipers fired on 2 men in open at I 35 central at 8.40 am. One man was seen to fall and the other took cover and escaped. Later 2 men were seen crawling to this point. They were fired on and enemy retaliated with M.G forcing sniper to abandon post. Our 60 pdr T.M. fired about 20 rds during bombing exchange and about 35 rds Stokes. Coy officers report accurate shooting by former but several failed to explode. Stokes guns were better but not so accurate.

(2) Patrol reconnoitered left flank from By cutting to centre T 36. Nothing to report except that our wire is bad near the cutting. Enemy consistently fires low in "No Mans Land" and occasionally sweeps it with M.G. June 11.30 pm to 1.45 am

Enemy Activity. (1) Attitude active or nervous  
(2) Artillery consisted of field gun support to T.M.s and R.Gs. One heavy gun apparently about 59" gun fired about four rounds from back of Battle Wood near cutting towards Dickelbush. From short time between sound of gun and explosion of shell would judge it to H.V. gun, possibly on Railway track. Enemy rather active with R.Gs. fish tail bomb.



# Intelligence Report

14<sup>th</sup> Jan Br.

13<sup>th</sup> July/16

General Information. (1) Our 18 pdrs were prompt in retaliating for enemy bombing and field gun activity firing about 100 rds during night. We fired 176 R.Gs. in bombing engagement with enemy between 3 to 5 am and again later in morning. M.G used indirect fire on road I 38 a 1.8 from Grand Fleet St. positions early evening. Our M.Gs in front line were active in replying and keeping down enemy M.G and rifle fire during night. Lewis gun successfully fired on working party opposite T 37. An enemy sniper was silenced by our snipers at I 35 a 5.3. Snipers fired on 2 men in open at I 35 central at 8.40 am. One man was seen to fall and the other took cover and escaped later 2 men were seen crawling to this point. They were fired on and enemy retaliated with M.G forcing sniper to abandon post. Our 60 pdr T.M. fired about 20 rds during bombing exchange and about 35 rds Stokes. Coy officers report accurate shooting by former but several failed to explode. Stokes guns were better but not so accurate.

(2) Patrol reconnoitred left flank from By cutting to centre T 36. Nothing to report except that our wire is bad near the cutting. Enemy consistently fires low in "No Mans Land" and occasionally sweeps it with M.G. Time 11.30 pm to 1.45 am

Enemy's Activity. (1) Attitude active or nervous  
(2) Artillery consisted of field gun support to T.M.s and R.Gs. One heavy gun apparently about 59" gun fired about four rounds from back of Battle Wood near cutting towards Dickelbush. From short time between sound of gun and explosion of shell would judge it to H.V. gun. possibly on Railway truck. Enemy rather active with R.Gs. fish tail bomb.

and large "Munewerfer" latter judged from large piece picked up to be about 8 to 10 in in diameter and about 2 ft to 2 ft 6 in long apparently shaped like large Howitzer shell. Explored <sup>base about 1/2 in thick.</sup> very heavy M.G. as usual although reduced by our M.G.s.

Sinking very much reduced in day time. T.M.S. active and very accurate. Patrols nil.

Enemy's Defenses. (1) I 35 a 4 1/2 5 1/2 retreating trench. at 6 am.

I 35 central 7:5 am carrying party with timbers wearing grey uniform and forage caps. I 35 a 2:3 repairing parapet. Working party opposite T 33 at 10 pm dispersed by rifle fire.

(3) I 35 a 7:8 Sinking post.

(5) I 34 d 2:5 point from which "sausages" were seen to rise landing behind T 35. T.M.E suspected at I 35 a 1:2 1/2

Enemy's Movements etc. (5) 3 enemy seen in front of screen at 6:20 am location I 35 central wearing usual uniform and also belts and revolvers. They disappeared in C.T. and reappeared at 6:40 am one carrying walking stick then towards screen jumping over a trench and disappearing in bushes. Same location at 6:30 am man dressed in dark trousers and light shirt seen.

Communications. (4) Powerful searchlight seen during night on front T 34.

Aircraft Movement. Enemy plane flew very low over ~~our~~ our trenches about dusk and also about 10:30 pm.

Miscellaneous. (2) O.P. established at I 34 b 8:4 1/2 and O.P. at I 35 a 1 1/2 7 3/4 improved.

Arthur Dean  
Lt.  
14th Ban Bu.

and large "Munawerfa." latter judged from large piece picked up to be about 8 to 10 m in diameter and about 2 ft to 2 ft 6 in long apparently shaped like large mortar shell. Explosive <sup>base</sup> very heavy. M.G. as usual although reduced by our M.G.s.

Sinping very much reduced in daytime. T.M.s active and very accurate. Patrols nil.

Enemy's Defenses. (1) I 35 a 4 1/2 5 1/2 retreating trenches. at 6 am.

I 35 central 7:50 am carrying party with timbers wearing grey uniform and forage caps. I 35 a 2-3 repairing parapet. Working party opposite T 33 at 10 pm dispersed by rifle fire.

(3) I 35 a 7.8 Sinping post.

(5) I 34 d 2.5 point from which "sausages" were seen to rise landing behind T 35. T.M.E suspected at I 35 a 1.2 1/2

Enemy Movements etc. (5) 3 enemy seen in front of screen at 6:20 am. Location I 35 central, wearing usual uniform and also belts and revolvers. They disappeared in C.T. and reappeared at 6:40 am one carrying walking stick, then towards screen jumping over a trench and disappearing in bushes. Same location at 6:30 am man dressed in dark trousers and light shirt seen.

Communications. (4) Powerful searchlight seen during night in front T 34.

Aircraft Movement. Enemy plane flew very low over ~~our~~ our trenches about dusk and also about 10:30 pm.

Miscellaneous. (2) O.P. established at I 34 b 8.4 1/2 and O.P. at I 35 a 1 1/2 7 1/4 improved.

Arthur Dean

Lt.

14th Ban Bu.

Intelligence Section

14<sup>th</sup> July '16.

14<sup>th</sup> B Coy Bn

General Information (1) ~~But~~ During day our 18 ftrs and 4.5 m hows. mainly registering on our frontage. 70 rds of former fired at front line trench opposite T 35. M.G. dispersed two enemy working parties in front of F 33 and 36 during night. Also fired at flashes of enemy M.G.s. Fear of enemy digging at T 35 a S.H. 6 ftr on by snipers. Two reported hit. One of enemy was induced by use of dummy, to fire over parapet at T 35 a 3.4 He was fired on by sniper in another bay. Shot was seen to clip <sup>top</sup> sandbag immediately in front of him and must have hit him. He disappeared behind parapet and didn't fire again. Our T.M.s breached enemy parapet opposite T 38 in two places.

(2) Patrol went out in front T 36 and left T 37 between 10.45 pm and 2.15 am. Working party behind front line trench opposite T 36 reported dispersed by H.G. fire.

Enemy Activity (1) Attitude quiet

(2) 20 rds. 4.1 H.E. 1 minute

intervals ~~behind T 36~~ ~~between 9 and 10 am.~~ Sniping very quiet. Enemy retaliated with Maxim fire on cutting when our T.M.s breached his parapet <sup>of danger</sup>.

Enemy Defences (1) T 35 b. 0.2 New C.T. running N & S.

(4) T 34 b 7.2 1/2 O.P.

(7) T 34 b 8.1 1/4 Small wicker screen

(10) T 34 b ~~6.2~~ 6 1/2 1 Occupied house

14th Sept 1941

(1) Working parties on enemy front line  
at 11 pm and 3 am dispersed by rifle fire  
Fresh earth visible at I 34 b 9 1/2 2 and I 34  
b 8 1/2 2.

Enemy movement etc. (1) I 35 a 7.5 Several parties  
of two and three seen to walk along tramway  
communications. I 34 b 7.3 Pigeon seen to  
rise at this point.

Aircraft movement. at 11 pm flight of our  
planes chased enemy lines.

A. W. Lewis

14th Jan 41

(1) I 34 b 1.1  
(2) I 34 b 1.2  
(3) I 34 b 1.3  
(4) I 34 b 1.4  
(5) I 34 b 1.5  
(6) I 34 b 1.6  
(7) I 34 b 1.7  
(8) I 34 b 1.8  
(9) I 34 b 1.9  
(10) I 34 b 1.10  
(11) I 34 b 1.11  
(12) I 34 b 1.12  
(13) I 34 b 1.13  
(14) I 34 b 1.14  
(15) I 34 b 1.15  
(16) I 34 b 1.16  
(17) I 34 b 1.17  
(18) I 34 b 1.18  
(19) I 34 b 1.19  
(20) I 34 b 1.20

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR

DIARY

OF

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

AUGUST

1916.

WITH APPENDICES 11/1 to 11/18,  
111/1 to 111/6, and IV/1 to IV/6

VOLUME 16 - 8.

WAR DIARY

14th Canadian Battalion 1st Canadian Divn.

from 1st to 31st August, 1916.

Volume 18.

Diary Text 8 pages.

Appendix I/I

- Headquarters 14th Canadian Bn. Royal Montreal Regt. Report on operations at Trench 39 on night 3rd August.
- " II/I Bombardment carried out by Heavy Arty. on the 6th August
- " II/2 O.O. No. 69, by Lieut. Col. R.P. Clark dated the 6th August, 1916, Relief of 14th Cdn. Bn. by 7th Cdn. Bn. on night 6/7th August.
- " II/3 O.O. No. 70 by Lieut. Col. R.P. Clark dated the 10th August, 1916, Battalion commended march to Second Army Training area N. W. of St. OMER Bn. march independently from VICTORIA LINES at 6 a.m. and arrived in billets Q 5.2.9.8. STEENVORDE Area at 9.55 a.m.
- " II/4 O.O. No. 72 by Lieut. Col. R.P. CLARK dated the 11th August, 1916. Resuming of march of 14th Cdn. Bn. to 2nd Army training area to-morrow.
- " II/5 O.O. No. 73 by Lieut. Col. R.P. Clark commanding 14th Cdn. Bn. Conclusion of march of 14th Cdn. Bn. to the 2nd Army training area to-morrow, 13th Aug.
- " II/6 O.O. by Lieut. Col. R.P. Clark commanding 14th Cdn. Bn. instructions re attack of Bde. on August 18th.
- " II/7 O.O. No. 75 dated the 18th August, instructions re march of 14th Bn. on the 18th August.
- " II/8 O.O. No. 1 dated the 18th August, instructions re march of 14th Bn. on ~~March~~ August 19th.
- " II/9 O.O. No. 76 instructions re attack of 14th Bn. on the 22nd August .
- " II/10 O.O. No. 77 dated the 23rd August, instructions re attack of 3rd C.I.B. on August 24th.
- " II/11 Extracts from brigade orders reference attack on August 24th.
- " II/12 to II/14 Notes received from Bde. reference attack on August 24th.
- " II/15 O.O. No. 77 dated the 26th August instructions re move of 14th Bn. on August 27th to reserve army area.
- " II/16 O.O. No. 78 dated the 28th August, instructions regarding move of 14th Bn. on August 29th
- " II/17 O.O. No. 80 dated the 29th August, 14th Bn. instruction for march on August 30th.

Appendix	II/18	O.O. 81 dated the 30th August, 14th Bn. instructions re march on August 30th and 31st.
"	III/1 to III/6	Intelligence report from the 1st to 6th August.
"	IV/1	Casualties for the month of August.
"	IV/2	Defence scheme for trenches 33 to 38.
"	IV/3	Disposition report August 1st.



14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR

DIARY

AUGUST 1916.

TEXT.

14<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118






Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

August 1916.

Page 1

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
YPRES SALIENT VERBRANDEN- MOLEN SECTOR TRENCHES 33 to 38 (incl)	1916 AUGUST	2:45 am 1st	Very hot day: <u>Wind</u> , very light and variable. 14th Canadian Battalion completed relief of 3rd Canadian Battalion. Enemy unusually quiet, no sniping or artillery or machine gun fire. <u>Working Parties</u> : - 410 other ranks under supervision of Engineers and Lieut. Jull, Works Officer, worked on General Repairs to Front Line and Support Trenches, also Reserve Line.	 III/1. IV/1. IV/3.
---	AUGUST	2ND	Very hot day: <u>Wind</u> - Light N.N.W. Enemy quiet though sniping was a little more active during day. Slight Trench Mortar and Artillery activity at dusk. <u>Working Parties</u> : - 410 Other ranks under Engineer Officers and Lieut. Jull Works Officer, continued strengthening defences of front, support and reserve lines.	 III/2 IV/1
---	AUGUST	3RD	Weather still continues to be very hot: Mild N. Wind. Our artillery active about noon and continued to shell spasmodically throughout the afternoon. Increased activity in aircraft by both sides. Sniping and Machine Gun fire indifferent. <u>Working Parties</u> : - 410 Other ranks furnished. <u>Work</u> : - General Repairs to front, support and reserve lines: Wiring "R" Line: Building new Battalion Headquarters.	 I/1 III/3. IV/1.
---	AUGUST	4TH	Very fine day with N.N.E. breeze. Enemy very quiet during day: slight Grenade and Artillery activity during early part of night. <u>Working Parties</u> : - 410 other ranks. <u>Work done</u> : - Continuance of work on New Headquarters, and front, support and reserve lines: Two wiring parties ("R" Line and Verbrandenmolen Trench) furnished.	 III/4 IV/1.
---	AUGUST	5TH	Very hot day: Wind - Light N. Enemy bombarded Trench 38 and left front with minnenwerfers and whizz-bangs during early part of afternoon. Enemy very nervous during night when slight Artillery and Trench Mortar action occurred. Proposed operations by 15th Battalion, for purposes of identification were not carried out.	 III/5 IV/1.

2 14th Canadian Battalion

WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

August 1916.

Page 2

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
YPRES SALIENT VERBRANDEN- MOLEN SECTOR TRENCHES 33- TO 38 (incl.)	1916 AUGUST 5TH		<p><u>Working Parties</u>:- 305 other ranks. <u>Work</u>:- Repairs to front, support and Reserve Lines: building new Battalion Headquarters: wiring parties on "R" Line and Verbrandenmolen trench.</p> <p>Weather more cool than previously, and more cloudy. <u>Wind</u>:- N.N.W. Heavy Artillery action on left flank. <u>Situation</u>:- <u>Morning</u> - Very quiet, no activity whatever. <u>Afternoon</u> - Very quiet <u>Evening</u> - Slight grenade activity, Sniping and machine gun fire normal. 14th Canadian Battalion relieved by 7th Canadian Battalion.</p> <p><u>Working Parties</u>:- 243 other ranks. <u>Work</u>:- Strengthening Reserve Line and building dug-outs in same. Wiring parties on "R" Line and verbrandenmolen trench.</p>	<p>II/1 II/2 III/6 IV/1 IV/2</p>
	AUGUST 6TH	3am (7 <sup>th</sup> )	<p>Very fine day. Enemy shelled SWAN CHATEAU and vicinity with 5.9 high explosive shells, making two direct hits and six more in close proximity. <u>Disposition of Battalion in brigade support</u>:- Headquarters, one-half Details, one-half No. 1 Company - SWAN CHATEAU and vicinity. Remainder No. 1 Company, Nos. 2 and 3 Companies - SEGARD CHATEAU and vicinity. No. 4 Company - MOATED FARM. <u>Working Parties</u>:- 6 Officers and 370 other ranks. <u>Work</u>:- Burying Cable and carrying material.</p>	<p>I/2 IV/1</p>
YPRES SALIENT BRIGADE SUPPORT SWAN and SEGARD CHATEAU	AUGUST 7TH	5:50pm	<p>Very fine days Enemy Aircraft overhead at 6 a.m., 1 p.m., and 6 p.m., Gas Alert On. Heavy bombardment followed by Gas Attack on frontage of Corps occupying trenches on our left. No further details obtained. This Battalion was ordered to "Stand To" while activity was on. <u>Working Parties</u>:- 6 Officers and 370 other ranks. <u>Work</u>:- burying Cable and Carrying Material.</p>	<p>I/2</p>
	AUGUST 8TH			

14<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion

WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

August 1916.

Page 3

(Heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
YPRES SALIENT BRIGADE SUPPORT SWAN and SEGARD CHATEAUX	1916 AUGUST 9TH.	10-05PM	<p>very fine day. Heavy artillery of both sides active throughout the day. Battery positions shelled in vicinity of SWAN CHATEAU. <u>Relief</u>: - 14th Canadian Battalion relieved by 4th Battalion, Canadian Mounted Rifles.</p>	
YPRES SALIENT VICTORIA LINES	AUGUST 10TH		<p>Dull in morning, but very fine in afternoon. Day spent in preparation for coming march.</p>	
MARCH TO STEENVOORDE AREA	AUGUST 11TH.		<p>Very fine day. Battalion commenced march to Second Army Training Area, N. West of St. Omer. Battalion marched independently from VICTORIA LINES at 6 a.m. and arrived in billets Q.5.a.9.8., Sheet 27, STEENVOORDE AREA, at 9.55 a.m. Clean up and rest during remainder of day.</p>	II/3.
MARCH TO NOORDPEENE AREA.	AUGUST 12TH.		<p>Very fine day. Battalion resumed march to 2nd Army Training Area, leaving billets (Q.5.a.9.8., Sheet 27) at 2 a.m., arriving at rendezvous of 3rd Brigade at 2.45 a.m. March commenced at 3 a.m. <u>Order of March</u>: - Divisional Headquarters with Transport. H.Q. Divisional Engineers with Transport. Brigade Headquarters with Transport. No. 4 Signal Section with Transport. 15th Battalion without Transport. 16th Battalion " " 14th Battalion " " 13th Battalion " " Battalion Transport Brigaded 1/c Transport Officer 15th Battalion. Machine Gun Company with Transport. Trench Mortar Battery with Transport. 1st and 3rd Companies Field Engineers. 3rd Field Ambulance.</p> <p>The line of march extended over a distance of about 6 miles, e.g. when</p>	II/4.

14<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion

WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

Page 3

(Erase heading not required.)

August 1916.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
YPRES SALIENT BRIGADE SUPPORT SWAN and SEWARD CHATEAUX	1916 AUGUST 9TH.	10:05 PM	<p>very fine day. Heavy artillery of both sides active throughout the day. Battery positions shelled in vicinity of SWAN CHATEAU. <u>Relief</u>:- 14th Canadian Battalion relieved by 4th Battalion, Canadian Mounted Rifles.</p>	
YPRES SALIENT VICTORIA LINES	AUGUST 10TH		<p>Dull in morning, but very fine in afternoon. Day spent in preparation for coming march.</p>	
MARCH TO STEENVOORDE AREA	AUGUST 11TH.		<p>Very fine day. Battalion commenced march to Second Army Training Area, N. West of St. Omer. Battalion marched independently from VICTORIA LINES at 6 a.m. and arrived in billets Q.5.a.9.8., Sheet 27, STEENVOORDE AREA, at 9.55 a.m. Clean up and rest during remainder of day.</p>	II/3.
MARCH TO NOORDPEENE AREA.	AUGUST 12TH.		<p>Very fine day. Battalion resumed march to 2nd Army Training Area, leaving billets (Q.5.a.9.8., Sheet 27) at 2 a.m., arriving at rendezvous of 3rd Brigade at 2.45 a.m. March commenced at 3 a.m. <u>Order of March</u>:- Divisional Headquarters with Transport. H.Q. Divisional Engineers with transport. Brigade Headquarters with Transport. No. 4 Signal Section with Transport. 15th Battalion without Transport. 16th Battalion " " " 14th Battalion " " " 13th Battalion " " " Battalion Transport Brigaded 1/c Transport Officer 15th Battalion. Machine Gun Company with Transport. Trench Mortar Battery with Transport. 1st and 3rd Companies Field Engineers. 3rd Field Ambulance.</p> <p>The line of march extended over a distance of about 6 miles, e.g. when</p>	II/4.

14<sup>th</sup> Canadian

WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.






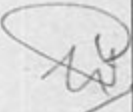
Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

August, 1916

Page 4.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
MARCH TO NOORDPEENE AREA	1916 AUGUST 12 <sup>TH</sup> 12 <sup>TH</sup>		<p>the head of the column entered OXELAERE the rear of the column left STEENVOORDE. 14th Battalion arrived in billets in NOORDPEENE AREA at 9.55 a.m. Headquarters at road junction south of "P" in Point Du Jour on WATTEN - CASSEL ROAD. Reference Map HAZEBROUCK, Sheet 5a.</p>	
MARCH TO 2ND ARMY TRAINING AREA, N.W. ST. OMER	AUGUST 13 <sup>TH</sup>		<p>Very fine Day. Battalion concluded march to Training Area via WATTEN. Destination reached at 9.45 a.m. Battalion billeted in Chateau and outbuildings about one-half mile from the village of EPERLECQUES (Square 3B, HAZEBROUCK 5a Map), with the exception of No. 4 Company and Machine Gun Section and Intelligence Section which were billeted on out-skirts of village. Remainder of day spent in rest and cleaning up.</p>	 II/5  
2ND ARMY TRAINING AREA N.W. ST. OMER	AUGUST 14 <sup>TH</sup>		<p>Dull day with slight drizzle of rain, afternoon brighter though showery. <u>Training:</u>- Company and Battalion in Attack in morning. Muster Parade and kit inspection in afternoon. <u>Sports:</u>- Baseball Match, 14th Battalion versus 3rd Field Ambulance. Score:- 14th Battalion 2. 3rd Field Ambulance 2.</p>	
---	AUGUST 15 <sup>TH</sup>		<p>Fine day with occasional showers. <u>Training:</u>- Physical Drill, Platoon and Company Drill, extended prder movements, Battalion in attack.</p>	
---	AUGUST 15 <sup>TH</sup>		<p>Showery during forenoon, fine in afternoon. Battalion Field Day Operations. "Fall In" 6.45 a.m. and marched to Training Area. No. 4 Company Defensive, Nos. 1, 2 and 3 Companies Offensive. Position carried by attacking force at 11.45 a.m. Company, Platoon and Section Drill in afternoon. <u>Sports:</u>- Baseball Match. - 14th Battalion versus 16th Battalion in a very exciting game. At the end of the 16th Battalion's ninth innings the score was 7 to 3 in their favour, but 14th battalion turned defeat to victory by scoring the necessary five runs.</p>	

14<sup>th</sup> Canadian Division

WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

August 1916.

Page 5.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
2ND ARMY TRAINING AREA N.W. ST. OMER	1916 AUGUST <del>16TH</del> 17TH		<p>Very fine day.</p> <p><u>Training</u>:- Physical Drill 7 a.m. to 7.30 a.m. Company, Platoon, Section and Arm Drill 9 a.m. to 11 a.m. Instruction to Company Bombers, Bayonet Fighting, Instruction in Scouting.</p> <p><u>Sports</u>:- Football - 14th Battalion versus 3rd Field Ambulance. Score - 14th Battalion 3 goals, 3rd Field Ambulance 0.</p>	
	AUGUST 18TH		<p>Fair day, cloudy and showery.</p> <p>3rd brigade Field Day for the purpose of testing liaison work.</p>	II/6.
	AUGUST 19TH		<p>Dull morning with several heavy showers. Finer afternoon.</p> <p><u>Training</u>:- Battalion practised movements illustrating formations of Advance Flank and Rear Guards, and Protection of Column at Rest. Lecture to entire Battalion on "The Use of the Bayonet" by Captain Betts.</p>	II/7 II/8
	AUGUST 20TH		<p>Very fine morning, heavy showers in afternoon.</p> <p>Church Parade in morning. Musketry Practice at Ranges, Practice with Smoke Helmets, Company, Platoon and Section Drill in afternoon.</p> <p><u>Sports</u>:- Cricket Match - 14th Battalion versus 3rd Field Ambulance. 3rd Field Ambulance won by 11 runs. Football Match - Owing to rain this match between the 14th Battalion and 1st Divisional Train was stopped after 15 minutes play. Score - 14th Battalion 1, 1st Divisional Train - 3.</p>	
	AUGUST 21ST		<p>Fair day - cloudy.</p> <p><u>Training</u>:- Musketry practice on ranges with and without smoke helmets. Company, Platoon and Squad Drill. Lecture to details and 25% of Companies on "Protection against Gas" and Instruction in smoke helmet drill, by Divisional Gas Officer.</p>	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

Page 6.

(Erase heading not required.)

August, 1916.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
2nd Army Training Area N.W. St. Omer.	1916 August	22nd	<p>Fine morning and afternoon, slight rainfall in the evening.</p> <p><u>Training</u>: - forenoon, the Battalion went to the Training Area and practised Battalion in Attack. Company, Platoon and Section Drill, and Lectures on Bombs and Gas in afternoon.</p> <p>Lecture on Gas, Bombs and Artillery by Captain Brothers in evening.</p> <p><u>Sports</u>: - Football Match - 14th Battalion versus 16th Battalion.</p> <p>Score - 14th Battalion 1, 16th Battalion Nil.</p>	II/9.
"	August	23rd	<p>Very fine day, rain in the evening.</p> <p><u>Training</u>: - Musketry at ranges with and without Smoke Helmets. Company and Platoon Drill recent drafts and bugle Band instructed in Bombing.</p> <p>Lecture at 6 p.m. by Divisional Grenade Officer on "Use of Lewis Gun, Bombs and Trench Mortars at the Somme."</p> <p>Concert at 8 p.m. 13th, 15th and 16th Battalions and 3rd Canadian Field Ambulance invited to attend.</p>	
"	August	24th	<p>Fair day, cloudy.</p> <p>Field Day Operations of 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade.</p> <p><u>Sports</u>: - Football Match - 14th Battalion versus 3rd Field Ambulance.</p> <p>Score: - 14th Battalion, Nil. 3rd Field Ambulance Nil.</p>	II/10 II/11 II/12 II/13.
"	August	25th	<p>Very fine day.</p> <p>Battalion to Training Area at 8 a.m. <u>Morning</u>: - Field Operations and Musketry. <u>Afternoon</u>: - Company and Platoon Drill.</p> <p><u>Sports</u>: - Baseball Match - 14th Battalion versus 15th Battalion: 5 innings only. Score: - 14th Battalion 9, 15th Battalion 1.</p>	
"	August	26th	<p>Showery during morning, fine for remainder of day.</p> <p>No. parades. <u>Sports</u>: - Baseball Match - 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade versus 1st Canadian Infantry Brigade. 3 Representatives from the 14th Battalion in the 3rd Brigade Team. Score: - 3rd Brigade 2, 1st Brigade 1.</p> <p><u>Cricket Match</u>: - 14th Battalion versus 7th Battalion. 14th Battalion won by 11 runs.</p>	



## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

August, 1916.

Page 7.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date 1916	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
2ND ARMY TRAINING AREA. N.W. ST.OMER	August. 27th		<p>Very showery throughout the day.            Kit inspection and both Protestant and Roman Catholic Church Parades in the morning.            Sports:-Baseball Match, 14th Battalion versus 7th Battalion            Score:-14th Battalion 8, 7th Battalion 5 runs.            Battalion "Fall In" at 8.15 p.m. and marched to St.OMER Station            Arrived St.OMER Station 8.30 p.m. Entrained 9.30 p.m. Train Left at 10.05 p.m.</p>	<p>II/14.            II/15.</p>
CONTEVILLE - COULONVILLERS	August 28th		<p>Showery throughout the morning - fine afternoon.            Arrived CONTEVILLE Station 5.45 a.m. Battalion marched from CONTEVILLE Station to COULONVILLERS, arriving at latter place at 8.55 p.m.            Battalion billeted on outskirts of village. Battalion Headquarters at Junction of Road E. Entrance to COULONVILLERS.</p>	
COULONVILLERS - PERNOIS.	August 29th		<p>Showery during the morning, heavy thunderstorms in the afternoon.            Battalion resumed the march - Destination - PERNOIS. Battalion left COULONVILLERS at 7.30 a.m. and arrived in billets, on outskirts of PERNOIS, at 1.15 p.m.</p>	II/16
PERNOIS - LA VICOQNE.	August. 30th		<p>Very rainy throughout the day.            Battalion resumed the march. "Fall In" 7 a.m., arriving at the 3rd Brigade rendezvous at 7.30 a.m. Battalion entered billets at LA VICOQNE at 12.05 p.m. Battalion rested during the afternoon.</p>	II/17.
LA VICOQNE - VADENGOURT.	August 31st		<p>Very fine day.            Battalion resumed the march. "Fall In" 7.30 am. arriving at 3rd Brigade rendezvous at 8 a.m. Battalion reached Billets (Camp in Wood, N. of VADENGOURT at 12.45 p.m. Remainder of day Battalion resting.</p>	II/18.

R.P. Clark

Commanding Lieutenant-Colonel,  
 14th Canadian Battalion.

14 *pana* *attalion*

WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

August, 1916.

Page 8. (Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
<p><u>INDEX to APPENDICES.</u></p> <p>Documents sent to and received from a higher Command - I/1, and I/2.  Documents sent to a subordinate Command - II/1 ----- II/18.  Intelligence Reports - III/1 ----- III/6.  Casualty Report - IV/1.  Appendix to Defence Scheme - IV/2.  Disposition Report - IV/3.</p>				

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR

DIARY

AUGUST 1916.

APPENDICES II/1 to II/18, III/1 to III/4,  
and IV/1 to IV/4.



*Trails*

Appendix I/1

Headquarters,  
14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment,  
4th August, 1916.

3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade.

I beg to submit report on the operations at Trench 39 on the night of 3rd instant.

At 10.01. p. m. the camouflages were blown and at the same moment our field guns, trench mortars and Stokes guns opened heavily. At 10.05. the enemy bombarded Trench 38 with minenwerfers and at 10.07. used heavy artillery. The D/48 Howitzers opened fire at this time. At 10.08. minenwerfers and 4.1. high explosive shells were falling around Battalion Headquarters. The fire now slackened on Trench 38 but at 10.19. became intense.

Our No. 7 Colt machine gun was put out of action at 10.20. The bombardment on both sides continued with varying intensity, minenwerfers still active around Trench 38. At 10.30. p. m. the enemy 4.1. shells were dropping very close to Headquarters. From 10.32. onwards, our fire from all weapons slackened up considerably and our front line Companies reported situation becoming quieter.

In response to our query at 10.53. the 16TH BATTALION requested us to keep our Trench Mortar firing on THE CATERPILLAR. This was done, until at 11.22. the mortar was put out of action by a shell. The crew of this mortar did good work under heavy fire.

At the same time, 11.22. we succeeded in getting our No. 7 Colt gun into action again

Our front line Companies reported all quiet at 11.37. p. m.

The Stokes guns fired 275 bombs and the Trench Mortars 99 mortars during the operations.

Respectfully submitted for your information, please.

Lieut.  
Adj. 14th Canadian Battalion.

1.05. a. m.



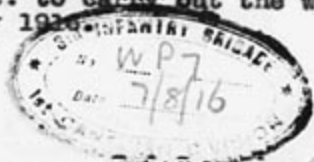
Work programme for Forward Area - 3rd Canadian Infantry Bde. 7th August & until further notice.

Party	Sector	Unit	Off.	O.R.	Rendezvous	Time	Met by	Work.
A	Right	13th Bn	1	50	Engineers Dump at Bluff	10-10 pm	Representative 1st F'd Co.	Carrying to Right.
B	"	"	1	50	-do-	10-20 pm	-do-	" " Left.
C	"	"	1	50	-do-	10-30 pm	-do-	" " "
D	"	"	1	80	Fear Tree Farm	10-00 pm	-do-	New crater consolidation.
E	"	"	1	50	-do-	10-10 pm	-do-	HASTINGS ST. (Deep living
F	"	"	1	50	-do-	10-20 pm	-do-	Trench off HEDGE ROW).
G	"	"	1	50	-do-	10-30 pm	-do-	POLLOCK DRAIN (Trench 30).
H	"	"	1	10	Mouth of Tunnel in WYND	10-00 pm	3rd T. M. Bty.	New International (Trench
I	"	18th Bn	1	50	BELFORD HOUSE	10-00 pm	Guide from 1st Tun.Co.	31 S and 30 S).
J	"	"	1	50	BELFORD HOUSE	10-00 pm	" " 3rd Tun.Co.	30 R.
K	Centre	14th Bn	1	30	Transport Farm	10-00 pm	" " 3rd Tun.Co.	New Stokes Gun emplacement.
L	"	"	1	100	Bedford House Signal Off.	10-00 pm	Lieut. May.	Carrying Material for 1st T.C
M	"	"	2	130	Sunken Rd. Dugouts.	10-15 pm	Rep. of 2nd Field Co.	-do- -do- 3rd T.C.
N	"	"	1	70	-do-	10-20 pm	-do-	Burying Cable.
O	"	"	1	40	Jackson St. Dump	10-15 pm	-do-	VERBRANDENMOLEN Trench.
P	Left	8th Bn	1	30	-do-	10-15 pm	Rep. 1st Can. Pioneers.	Carrying R.E. Material to R. Tr.
Q	"	"	1	40	Jct. of FOSSEWAY & Knoll RD	10-15 pm	3rd Field Coy.	wiring material for
R	"	"	1	30	Jackson Street Dump	10-15 pm	-do-	VERBRANDENMOLEN & 38 Trench.
S	"	"	1	10	-do-	10-00 pm	Guide from 3rd T.M. Bty.	Carrying, to Infy. Tunnels.
T	"	"	1	10	Sunken Road Dump	10-00 pm	-do-	Carrying wire.
U	"	"	2	125	Jct. of FOSSEWAY & Knoll Rd	10-30 pm	Guide 3rd Field Co.	Eng. Material to BENSHAM RD DUN
V	"	"	1	90	KILLEBEKE HALT	10-30 pm	-do-	Stokes gun emplacements.
W	"	"	2	90	Jct. of FOSSEWAY & Knoll Rd	10-00 pm	-do-	-do-
X	"	"	2	25	BATTERSEA FM. Co. H.Q.	10-00 pm	1st Can. Pioneers.	ZILLEBEKE SWITCH.
Y	"	"	2	2	Signal dugout Battersea Fm	24 hours	-do-	FOSSEWAY.
Z	"	"	1	10	FOSSEWAY & Knoll Rd. Jct.	1-30 to 5.30 pm	-do-	VERRET RIDE & X TR. RIGHT.
Z Z	"	"	1	5	-do-	-do-	-do-	Battersea Fm. Signal Dugouts.
								8 hrs. relief 1 - 9 pm, 5 am - 1 pm.
								Work on FOSSEWAY.
								ZILLEBEKE SWITCH.

Appendix I/2

Officers i/c working parties and guides must know the letter of party together with all details of work. Working Parties are to complete four hours work from time of arriving at locality where work is to be carried out. Officers and Guides should make themselves acquainted in advance of the route to the work.

The work in the above schedule does NOT include the work to be done by Battalions, in the front line; these latter will make direct arrangements with the representatives of their Field Coy. C.E. to carry out the work mentioned in paras. 4, 5, and 6, of 1st Canadian Divisional letter G.3-408-20 dated 31st July 1946.



*McNulty*  
Major.  
Brigade Major.

Appendix II/1

6th August 1916.

O. C. All Companies and Details.

The heavy artillery will carry out bombardments from 5 p.m. to 7 p.m. today on the German Sap from the SNOUT to our old trench 45 and also on the area enclosed within the small German Salient.

Trenches 39, 40, and left of 42 and 44 must be cleared.

Code words for bombardments "PECKHAM".

For your information and precaution please.

  
Lieutenant and Adjutant,  
14th Canadian Battalion.



Appendix II/2.

Copy No.....

OPERATION ORDER NO. 69.

SECRET.

*copy*

by  
Lieut:Colonel R. P. Clark  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.  
-----ooOoo-----

In the Field,  
August 6th 1916.

Relief.

1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will be relieved by the 7th CANADIAN BATTALION in trenches 33-38 inclusive and Supports on the night of August 6/7th .

Distribution.

2. Upon completion of relief the 14th BATTALION will occupy positions as follows; in the 2nd G.H.Q. Line:-

No. 1 Company.....Two Platoons SWAN CHATEAU.  
Two platoons SEGARD CHATEAU.

No. 2 Company.....Dig-outs near SEGARD CHATEAU.

No. 3 Company.....SEGARD CHATEAU.

No. 4 Company MOATED FARM.

Machine Gunners, Bombers and Intelligence Section....  
.....SWAN CHATEAU.

Advance Party.

3. Advance Party consisting of Lieutenant J.F.Fitzpatrick Lieutenant R. A. Pelletier, one senior N.C.O. and three Junior N.C.O.'s. from each Company, and one N.C.O. from each Detail will meet at Battalion Headquarters at 2 p.m. sharp to proceed to new positions. They will act as guides and will meet their units at WOODCOTE HOUSE at 12.30 pm the night of 6/7th August, and guide them to their positions. Units must not leave their present positions until relief is fully completed and will 'phone Battalion Headquarters to receive orders to move out using the word "PORTSMOUTH".

Trench Stores.

4. Especial care must be taken to have a complete inventory made out and receipted in triplicate by the relieving Battalion. Trenches must be left absolutely clean and a certificate to this effect obtained.

Precaution

5. Company and Unit Commanders will take due precautions particularly while crossing exposed ground to avoid any casualties occurring during the relief.

Reports.

6. Upon arrival in new positions Units to report to Battalion Headquarters giving accurate disposition of troops and list of stragglers and casualties if any.

Lieutenant and Adjutant,  
14th Canadian Battalion.

Issued at.....	by Orderly.
No. 1 Copy to	No. 1 Company.
" 2 " " "	" 2 "
" 3 " " "	" 3 "
" 4 " " "	" 4 "
" 5 " " "	Regtl. S.M. and Details.
" 6 " " "	Quartermaster
" 7 " " "	Orderly Room.
" 8 " " "	3rd Can. Inf. Bde.
" 9 " " "	Adjutant.
" 10 " " "	War Diary.
" 11 " " "	" "



by  
 Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment

Appendix II/3

Field August 10th 1916

- 1. MOVEMENT** The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will march to  
 STEENVOORDE AREA on August 11th via ABERLE  
 HOODPERRE AREA on August 12th via OZELARRE, BAVINGHOUE and  
 ZOYPERRE.  
 TRAINING AREA N.W. OF ST OMER on August 13th via WATTEN

**2. DETAILS OF MARCH** The march to the STEENVOORDE area will be A Battalion march  
 the balance will be Brigade marches.

**3. TOWNS OUT OF BOUNDS** No troops, stragglers, (if any) or personnel of any kind  
 are permitted to enter any part of Cassel.

**4. ORDER OF MARCH** The order of the march will be as follows:-

Signallers  
 Band  
 Headquarters and Sub-staff  
 No 4 Company  
 Scouts (9)  
 Stretcher Bearers (4)

No 2 Company  
 Bombers  
 Stretcher Bearers (4)

No 3 Company  
 Intelligence  
 Stretcher Bearers (4)

No 1 Company  
 Machine Gun  
 Stretcher Bearers (5)

Headquarters Medical Section will march in rear of the Batt  
 alion.

**5. MARCH DISCIPLINE** All units must keep proper distance and dressing, at all times  
 whether marching to attention or not.

Pay all compliments, by platoons, on the march;

Keep to the right of the road

No smoking while marching

15 minutes rest will be given before each clock hour during  
 which the troops may smoke.

Water bottles to be filled, but no water to be drunk unless  
 authorized by the Medical Officer or an Officer of the men's  
 unit; bottles to be inspected before start of march; any  
 spirituous liquors to be emptied

Great roads to be kept clear when a halt is ordered

Platoon commanders to march in rear of their plat cons.

**6. DRESS** The men's equipment must be neatly fitted in the manner adopted  
 by the Battalion; the pants must be rolled down over the  
 puttees. Everything possible must be done to present a  
 smart and uniform appearance.

**7. EQUIPMENT** Precautions must be observed to ensure that no equipment is  
 lost en route. 100 rounds S.A.A. to be carried by each C.R.

**8. MEDICAL** Any cases of sore feet after marching must be attended to  
 without delay.

E/II with next

Operation Orders contd.

9. STRAGGLING Should any man be too sick, or otherwise unable to march he must obtain written certificate (issued with these orders) to this effect from the Officer in rear of his unit which he will hand to the Medical Officer at rear of the Battalion who will report to Headquarters each night on this subject. All ranks must be impressed with the fact that to "Fall Out" on the march is a reflection on the training and discipline of the Regiment.

10. AMBULANCE O.C. No 3 FIELD AMBULANCE will detail one ambulance wagon to proceed in rear of the Battalion. *The wagon will report*

11. MEALS All details will receive meals from the travelling kitchen of the Company they march with (vide para 4) with the exception of Signallers who will march with No 2 Company. Transport and Headquarters Medical Section will march with No 3 Company, and Quartermasters Stores with No 4 Company. The Details cooks will assist on the travelling kitchen that supply their men with meals.

12. TRANSPORT No one, other than the driver, is permitted to ride on wagons and severe punishment will be awarded for any infringement of this Order.

13. BATTALION HEADQUARTERS. BATTALION HEADQUARTERS at conclusion of first days march will be at Q.5.A.9.8.

14. REPORTS At the end of each march unit commanders will report in person to BATTALION HEADQUARTERS giving details of any stragglers, sick etc.

15. ALARM POST The alarm post August 11th after arrival at destination will be at Battalion Headquarters.

16. ORDERLIES Two men from each Company and one each from Engineers, Machine Gun and Intelligence, must report at the end of each days march to BATTALION HEADQUARTERS to act as Orderlies.

17. ORDERS. Orders for each succeeding days march will be issued by 3rd BRIGADE HEADQUARTERS not later than 3 p.m. daily and BATTALION OPERATION ORDERS will be issued as soon as possible thereafter.

18. SANITATION VICTORIA LINES and ANY other billets, fields et c., occupied while en route must be left in scrupulously clean condition and receipts obtained by every unit.

19. ADVANCE PARTY Advance party consisting of Lieut R.A. PELLETIER four N.C.Os from each Company, one H.C.O. from each Detail, also Transport and Headquarters, will leave VICTORIA LINES at 5.15 A.M. and proceed to the STERNVOORDE AREA marching in a body to take over the allocated accommodation.

They will act as guides and meet the Battalion at the BELGIC-FRANCE FRONTIER on the STERNVOORDE ABELLE ROAD, ~~at the~~ Sheet 27 and direct their units to the billets provided.

20. BILLETTS. The Details will be billeted in the same billets as the Companies they march with (vide para 4).

K. 35th Div. Staff

JACKSON

Operation-Operation

OPERATION ORDERS contd.

21 GUARD Guard of one Officer, One sergeant, two corporals, and 12 men will march in rear and perform the usual duties of a stragglers guard.

22. SURPLUS S.A.A. All S.A.A. surplus to 120 rounds per man will be deposited in one place at present camp and to be removed by Salvage Coy.

23. TIME SCHEDULE Summary for August 14th

Reveille 4.15 a.m.  
Breakfast 6.15 a.m.  
Fall in 8.15 a.m.

Fall in in Order of march (vide para 4)

24. OFFICERS MESS BATTALION OFFICERS MESS closes after dinner August 14th and future meals must be arranged personally by the Officers of the various units.

25 BAGGAGE Headquarters Effects, Officers Kits, Orderly Room effects etc., must be ready for collection by Transport at 5.30 a.m. where August 14th

26. BRIGADE HEADQUARTERS 3RD BRIGADE HEADQUARTERS will be located at L. 24 A.9.2 until August 14th - 8 a.m. after that hour at WHITE CHATEAU STEENVOORDE. Q.I.B. 6.7.

27 DIVISIONAL HEADQUARTERS 1st DIVISIONAL HEADQUARTERS (less report centre) after 10 A.M. August 14th will be situated at P.S.P.C

Acknowledge please.

*[Signature]*  
Lieut and Adjt.,  
14th Canadian Battalion

No 1 Copy to No 1 Company  
No 2 " " 2 "  
No 3 " " 3 "  
No 4 " " 4 "  
No 5 " Machine Gun Section  
No 6 " R.S.M.  
No 7 " Bombard  
No 8 " Intelligence  
No 9 " Quartermaster  
No 10 Orderly Room  
No 11 3rd Can Inf Ede.  
No 12 War Diary  
No 13 War Diary  
No 14 Adjutant.

1

2

3

4

*Appendix II/4.*

Copy No.....

OPERATION ORDER NO. 72.

S E C R E T.

by L

Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

-----ooOoo-----

In the Field,  
August 11th 1946.

Reference Maps  
HAZEBROUCK Sheet 5a.  
Sheet 27.

- Movements. 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will resume the march to the 2nd Army Training Area tomorrow, moving to the NOORDPEENE AREA via OXELAERE - BAVINCHOU and ZUYTPEENE.
- Starting Point. 2. The Battalion in the same order of march as today will be formed up at the Starting Point at 3 a.m. sharp, Sheet 27, K. 34. c. 4. 2. ; on the HAZEBROUCK 5a Map JUNCTION of ROAD 100 yards NORTH of the "U" in CHAU on the STEENVOORDE - ABEELE ROAD and 200 yards SOUTH of the "B" in BEAUVOORDE.
- Transport. 3. The Transport will be Brigaded and march in rear of the 1st Battalion under the 15th Battalion Transport Officer to whom the 14th Battalion Transport Officer will report for instructions. Only KITCHENS and WATER CARTS accompany Battalion and these will march in rear of the Battalion. No luggage, effects, etc., are to be placed on Kitchens.
- Billets. 4. All Billets must be left thoroughly clean and receipt obtained for same. No parties to clean up or for any other purposes to be left behind.
- Equipment. 5. All O.R. must wear equipment and packs without exception.
- Billeting Party. 6. Billeting Party consisting of Lieutenant W. SHARP 4 n.c.o.'s. per Company and one N.C.O. from every Detail will pass Cross Roads, Sheet 27, P. 4. b. 7. 3. at 3 a.m. and will march with the parties from other Battalions in one body to NOORDPEENE under the command of the senior Officer by the route detailed for the column. The Brigade representative will meet them at the CROSS ROADS, SOUTH of LE MENECAAT, Sheet 27, H. 35. a. 2. 0.
- Supplies. 7. The Quartermaster will detail a representative to meet supply wagons at H. 35. a. 2. 0. at 3 p.m. and guide them to billets.

*Richard Lewis*  
Lieutenant and Adjutant,  
14th Canadian Battalion.

- 1
- |          |    |    |                                      |          |
|----------|----|----|--------------------------------------|----------|
| Copy No. | 1  | to | No. 1                                | Company. |
| " "      | 2  | "  | " 2                                  | "        |
| " "      | 3  | "  | " 3                                  | "        |
| " "      | 4  | "  | " 4                                  | "        |
| " "      | 5  | "  | Regimental Sergeant Major.           |          |
| " "      | 6  | "  | Quartermaster and Transport Officer. |          |
| " "      | 7  | "  | Orderly Room.                        |          |
| " "      | 8  | "  | Machine Gun Section.                 |          |
| " "      | 9  | "  | Bombing Officer.                     |          |
| " "      | 10 | "  | 3rd Can. Inf. Bde.                   |          |
| " "      | 11 | "  | Intelligence Officer.                |          |
| " "      | 12 | "  | Adjutant                             |          |
| " "      | 13 | "  | War Diary.                           |          |
| " "      | 14 | "  | War Diary.                           |          |

2



by  
 Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment,

Appendix II/5.

In the field  
 August 19th 1918

Reference Maps:-  
 HAZEBROUCK, Sheet 6a

- Movements. 1. The 14th Canadian Battalion will conclude the march to the 2nd Army Training Area to-morrow, marching via WATTEN.
- Starting Point. 2. The Battalion in the same order of march as to-day will be formed up at the starting point at 4.30 a.m. sharp, HAZEBROUCK, 5a Map On CASSEL WATTEN Road at junction south of P. in Point Du Jour.
- Transport. 3. The same arrangements as regards transport will hold good as were in force to-day. Cookers and water carts only accompany unit.
- Billets. 4. All billets must be left thoroughly clean and receipt obtained for same. No parties to clean up for any other purpose to be left behind.
- Cookers & Water Carts. 5. Field Kitchens will on all occasions be filled with water on the march also water carts must always be filled

Lieut and Adj.,  
 14th Canadian Battalion.

Copy No 1 to No 1 Company

"	2	"	2	"
"	3	"	3	"
"	4	"	4	"
"	5	"	Regimental Sergeant Major.	
"	6	"	Quartermaster and Transport Officer.	
"	7	"	Orderly Room	
"	8	"	Machine Gun Section	
"	9	"	Bombing Officer	
"	10	"	3rd Can. Inf. Bde.	
"	11	"	Intelligence Officer	
"	12	"	Adjutant	
"	13	"	War Diary	
"	14	"	" "	

2

by  
Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

Appendix II/6

- OPERATIONS** 1. The 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade together with the 3rd Brigade M.G. Company and 3rd Can. T.M. Battery will take part in operations for carrying out liaison work with No 6 Squadron R.F.C. on the morning of August 18th in the 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade Training Area.
- OBJECTIVE** 2. The Brigade will attack at 10 a.m. August 18th
- 1st Objective** - Enemy trenches running from BARLINGHEM-THE HILL N.E. of BARLINGHEM - Q.26.a.2.7. to the Southern outskirts of GRAND DIFQUES - Q.27.a.
- This line will be consolidated and strong patrols will be sent to clear MORINGHEM-PETIT DIFQUES and the QUARRIES in Q.20.b.
- 2nd Objective** - High ground S. of INGLINGHEM P.24.d. through Q.19.a. and Q.19.b. to QUARRIES in Q.14.a.
- ATTACKING FORCE** 3. The attack on the 1st Objective will be carried out by the 13th and 16th Battalions on a 3 Company front, with a Company in support.
- The attack on the 2nd objective will be similarly carried out by the 15th and 14th Battalions, in support respectively to the 13th and 16th Battalions.
- TIME OF ASSAULT** 4. The 13th and 16th Battalions will be formed in the assembly trenches ready for assault at 2.45 a.m.
- The 13th Battalion will occupy the trenches in the Valley from Q.32.a.2.2. to Q.28.b.2.2. Their right flank will rest on a line drawn from this point through Q.26 central to the junction of the 4 roads in PETIT DIFQUES Q.25.b.2.2.
- The 16th Battalion will be responsible for the clearing of PETIT DIFQUES and their right flank will extend as far as the QUARRIES Q.20.b.2.2.
- SUPPORTING BATTALIONS** 5. The 14th Battalion will be drawn up in support of the 16th Battalion at 0.45 a.m. in rear of the copse at Q.27.d. The 15th Battalion will be entrenched in positions (imaginary) about Q.32.e. and Q.32.f.
- END OF FIRST PHASE.** 6. When the 1st Objective has been gained and messages to this effect have been received at Brigade Headquarters from Battalions and from the R.F.C. - 3 Red rockets will be fired from Brigade Headquarters. This will indicate the 1st phase of the operations has been finished. The 14th and 15th Battalions will advance through the 16th and 13th Battalions and take up a position in the assembly trenches along the line of the PETIT DIFQUES-MORINGHEM road, with a view to attacking the 2nd objective.
- END OF SECOND PHASE.** 7. When information has been received that the 2nd Objective has been reached, 3 red rockets will be fired from Brigade Headquarters. Troops may then march home.
- Co C, Battalions will meet the Brigadier at the cross roads Q.13.d.5.6.
- DRESS and EQUIPMENT** 8. Each man will carry 120 rounds S.A.A., Iron Rations, and filled water Bottles and is presumed to carry two grenades and 6 sandbags. 25% of the men to carry Picks and shovels in the proportion of two shovels to one pick.

by  
Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

Appendix II/6.

## OPERATIONS

1. The 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade together with the 3rd Brigade H.Q. Company and 3rd Can. T.M. Battery will take part in operations for carrying out liaison work with No 6 Squadron R.F.C. on the morning of August 18th in the 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade Training Area.

## OBJECTIVE

2. The Brigade will attack at 10 a.m. August 18th  
1st Objective - Enemy trenches running from BARLINGHEM-THE HILL N.E. of BARLINGHEM - Q.26.d.2.7.- to the Southern outskirts of GRAND DIFQUES - Q.27.a.  
This line will be consolidated and strong patrols will be sent to clear MORINGHEM-PETIT DIFQUES and the QUARRIES in Q.20.b.

2nd Objective. High ground S. of INGLINGHEM P.24.d. through Q.19.a. and Q.19.b. to QUARRIES in Q.14.a.

## ATTACKING FORCE

3. The attack on the 1st Objective will be carried out by the 13th and 16th Battalions on a 3 Company front, with a Company in support.

The attack on the 2nd objective will be similarly carried out by the 16th and 14th Battalions, in support respectively to the 13th and 16th Battalions

## TIME OF ASSAULT

4. The 13th and 16th Battalions will be formed in the assembly trenches ready for assault at 9.45 a.m.

The 13th Battalion will occupy the trenches in the valley from Q.32.a.2.2. to Q.28.b.6.9. Their right flank will rest on a line drawn from this point through Q.26. central to the junction of the 4 roads in PETIT DIFQUES Q.25.b.6.4.

The 16th Battalion will be responsible for the clearing of PETIT DIFQUES and their right flank will extend as far as the QUARRIES Q.20.b.8.2.

## SUPPORTING BATTALIONS

5. The 14th Battalion will be drawn up in support of the 16th Battalion at 9.45 a.m., in rear of the copse at Q.27.d. The 16th Battalion will be entrenched in positions (imaginary) about Q.32.e. and Q. 32. d.

## END OF FIRST PHASE.

6. When the 1st Objective has been gained and messages to this effect have been received at Brigade Headquarters from Battalions and from the R.F.C. - 3 Red rockets will be fired from Brigade Headquarters. This will indicate the 1st phase of the operations has been finished. The 14th and 16th Battalions will advance through the 16th and 13th Battalions and take up a position in the assembly trenches along the line of the PETIT DIFQUES-MORINGHEM road, with a view to attacking the 2nd objective.

## END OF SECOND PHASE.

7. When information has been received that the 2nd Objective has been reached, 3 red rockets will be fired from Brigade Headquarters. Troops may then march home.

Os C. Battalions will meet the Brigadier at the cross road Q.13.d.8.6.

## DRESS and EQUIPMENT

8. Each man will carry 100 rounds S.A.A., Iron Rations, and filled water bottles and is presumed to carry two grenades and 6 sandbags. 25% of the men to carry Picks and shovels in the proportion of two shovels to one pick.

Members with the full complement of  
 held in reserve. Companies will have their full complement  
 of Bombers and Machine Gunners.

**REPORTS**

14. Reports before reaching objective will be made to the head of  
 the column, after the first objective has been reached, reports

to Battalion Headquarters, with reserve Company.

of reports to Battalion Headquarters, with reserve Company.  
 This will be done by the head of the column, after the first  
 objective has been reached, reports to Battalion Headquarters,  
 with reserve Company.

Copy No 1 to No 1 Company

- " 2
- " 3
- " 4
- " 5
- " 6
- " 7
- " 8
- " 9
- " 10
- " 11
- " 12
- " 13
- " 14

- to R.S.M.
- to Quartermaster and Transport Officer.
- to Orderly Room
- to Machine Gun Section.
- to Bombing Officer
- to Intelligence Officer
- to 3rd Coy Inf Bde.
- to Adjutant
- to War Diary
- to " "

GROUP NO 10

and  
 EQUIPMENT

**Signals** Battalions are reminded that, There will be one contact patrol machine - although 4 or 5 aeroplanes may be in the air. Mark: 1 black flag left hand lower plane.

(b) The object of the operations is to indicate the position of our troops to the aeroplanes, so that this information may be rapidly conveyed to Brigade, Divisional, Corps Headquarters and the Artillery.

(c) Only the foremost troops should indicate their positions after the objective is gained.

(d) Brigade and Battalion Headquarters will signal their positions at the beginning of operations and after any move.

**CODE LETTERS** Code Letters 3rd Bde. H.Q. - P.A. (green) Battalion will use letters of white cloth 18 ft. long & 6 ins. broad. Also one panel to indicate Bn. Headquarters.

**FLARES** 25 Flares (white) will be issued to each Company. Flares will be lit in groups of 3, and only when the objective has been reached or some further point, or when troops are unable to progress further.

**MIRRORS METAL DISCS** Vigilant periscope mirrors and metal discs will only be used as subsidiary means of indicating positions of troops and these should be shown only when our contact patrol is overhead; parties who become isolated should use their mirrors. Normally the contact patrol can see flares most easily.

**DISPOSITION** The Battalion, immediately prior to assault will be distributed as follows:-  
Nos 4, 3, 2 Companies, left to right, No 1 Company in reserve under Battalion Commander; in depth as per Plate X  
Nos 4, 3, 2 Companies will each take up a frontage of approximately 250 yards.

When formed up for the final assault, the Machine Gunners will be on the flanks of the second and third lines, and the Company Bombers with the second and third lines, Battalion Bombers will be held in reserve. Companies will have their full complement of Bombers and Machine Gunners.

**HOPPING UP** 14. Mopping up parties will be represented by Buglers (one bugler represents a section)

**ACTION** 15. At zero hour, 1st wave will advance and following waves at 100 yards distance.

**ON TAKING OBJECTIVE** Company Commanders will,  
(a) Send up three white rockets and expose discs and periscopes.  
(b) Advise artillery when barrage is required.  
(c) Send patrols with Lewis Gun each, well forward of objective.  
(d) Consolidate and dig Communication trench.  
(e) Communicate with Battalion Headquarters and send rough sketch.

**MEDICAL** 16. Regimental aid post will be with Battalion Headquarters.

*Signal*

Battalions are reminded that, there will be one contact patrol machine - although 4 or 5 aeroplanes may be in the air. Mark: 1 black flag left hand lower plane.

(b) The object of the operations is to indicate the position of our troops to the aeroplanes, so that this information may be rapidly conveyed to Brigade, Divisional, Corps Headquarters and the Artillery.

(c) Only the foremost troops should indicate their positions after the objective is gained.

(d) Brigade and Battalion Headquarters will signal their positions at the beginning of operations and after any move.

**CODE LETTERS.**

Each Battalion will make letters of white cloth 18 ft. long & 6 ins. broad. Also one panel to indicate Bn. Headquarters.

**FLARES**

11. 25 Flares (white) will be issued to each Company. Flares will be lit in groups of 3, and only when the objective has been reached or some further point, or when troops are unable to progress further.

**MIRRORS METAL DISCS.**

Vigilant periscopes mirrors and metal discs will only be used as subsidiary means of indicating positions of troops and these should be shown only when our contact patrol is overhead; parties who become isolated should use their mirrors. Normally the contact patrol can see flares most easily.

**DISPOSITION**

The Battalion, immediately prior to assault will be distributed as follows:-

- Nos 4, 3, 2 Companies, left to right, No 1 Company in reserve under Battalion Commander; in depth as per Plate X
- Nos 4, 3, 2 Companies will each take up a frontage of approximately 250 yards.

When formed up for the final assault, the Machine Gunners will be on the flanks of the second and third lines, and the Company Bombers with the second and third lines, Battalion Bombers will be held in reserve. Companies will have their full complement of Bombers and Machine Gunners.

**MOPPING UP**

14. Mopping up parties will be represented by Buglers (one bugler represents a section)

**ACTION**

15. At zero hour, 1st wave will advance and following waves at 100 yards distance.

- ON TAKING OBJECTIVE Company Commanders will,
- (a) Send up three white rockets and expose discs and periscopes.
  - (b) Advise artillery when barrage is required.
  - (c) Send patrols with Lewis Gun each, well forward of objective.
  - (d) Consolidate and dig Communication trench.
  - (e) Communicate with Battalion Headquarters and send rough sketch.

**MEDICAL**

16. Regimental aid post will be with Battalion Headquarters.





OPERATION ORDERS NO75SECRET

by  
 Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

Appendix II/7.

Field August 18th 1916

Reference Map 37A S.E.

1. The 14th Battalion will march at 8. a.m. to AREA via EPERLECQUES, turn S.W. at Junction of roads Q.9.B.8.9. to AREA.
2. No 3 Company will supply the advance Guard and will send forward scouts etc., at road junction Q.9.B.8.9.
3. On arrival at AREA several movements will be made illustrating formations of advance, flank and rear guards.
4. Protection of a column at rest will also be practised.
5. Four scouts from each platoon will report to Lieut McLean on order from Major McCombe after arrival at AREA.
6. Operation Orders for Advance Guard to be at Battalion Headquarters by midnight 18/19.

Lieut and Adjt.,  
 14th Canadian Battalion.

Copy No	1	to	No	1	Company
"	2	"	2	"	"
"	3	"	3	"	"
"	4	"	4	"	"
"	5	"			Regimental Sergeant Major.
"	6	"			Quartermaster and Transport Officer.
"	7	"			Orderly Room
"	8	"			Machine Gun Section
"	9	"			Bombing Officer
"	10	"			3rd Can. Inf. Bde.
"	11	"			Intelligence Officer
"	12	"			Adjutant
"	13	"			War Diary
"	14	"			"



Copy No. ....

OPERATION ORDER NO. 1

SECRET.

by  
 Captain F. W. Utton,  
 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.  
 -----ooOoo-----

In the Field,  
 August 18th 1916.

Reference Map, Sheet 87a, S.E.

Information. 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will march towards TRAINING AREA at 3 a.m., 19th August, 1916. No. 3 COMPANY will form an ADVANCED GUARD to this Column.

Intention. 2. At 7.30 a.m. No. 3 COMPANY will be formed up in Field opposite No. 1 Company's Headquarters, ready to march off via route - EPERLECQUES. On arrival at END OF ROAD S.W. towards TRAINING AREA Scouts will be pushed well forward.

Distribution:- 3.

Advance Guard  
 Commander  
 Lieut. G. L. Stairs

No. 3 Company, 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

Van Guard  
 Officer Commanding  
 Lieut. G. T. Bartlett

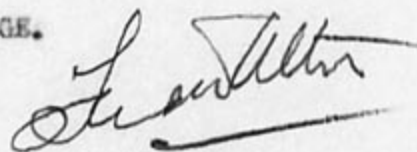
Nos. 9 and 10 Platoons, No. 3 Company.

Main Guard  
 Officer Commanding  
 Lieut. C. H. Selater

Nos. 11 and 12 Platoons, No. 3 Company,  
 1 Lewis Machine Gun, 14th Battalion Machine  
 Gun Company.

Reports. 4. Reports to Head of MAIN GUARD.

5. ACKNOWLEDGE.



Captain,  
 14th Canadian Battalion.

Issued at..... by Orderly.

Copy No. 1 to O. C. 14th Canadian Battalion.

- " " 2 " O. C. No. 3 Company.  
 " " 3 " Captain Utton.  
 " " 4 " Machine Gun Officer.  
 " " 5 " War Diary.  
 " " 6 " War Diary.



by  
 Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

Appendix II/9

1. The 14TH BATTALION will attack the CHALK PIT trenches at zero hour on August 22nd 1916.
2. Nos 1 and 2 Companies will attack in four waves, Nos 3 and 4 Companies will be in reserve.
3. The attack will be made from imaginary assembly trenches in the vicinity of CHALK PIT trenches.
4. The attack will be carried out in the new formation as laid down in Plates X and Z.
5. The 3RD CANADIAN TRENCH MORTAR BATTERY will cooperate.
6. Trench mortar and stokes guns have cooperated on the enemy front line trench and wire for two hours per day (at irregular hours) for three days previous to the attack.
7. AT ZERO HOUR (with imaginary artillery barrage on the enemy front line) first wave attacks.  
AT 0.25 Second wave will leave trenches.  
AT 0.50 Third wave will leave the trenches.  
AT 1.15 The bombardment ceases and the fourth wave leaves the trenches.
8. The reserve companies will automatically move up and take the positions of the attacking companies as they are vacated.
9. Regimental Aid Post will be established at Battalion Headquarters.
10. DRESS Light marching Order, 100 rounds S.A.A. haversack rations, iron rations, filled water-bottles (imaginary grenades (6)) 6 sand-bags) 25% of the men to carry picks and shovels in proportion of two shovels to one pick.
11. Reports to Battalion Headquarters situated at No. 3 Company in reserve.
12. Company Commanders will submit their units' Operation Orders to Headquarters by 6.30 a.m.
13. Acknowledge.

Lieutenant and Adjutant,  
 14th Canadian Battalion.

Issued at.....by Orderly.

Copy No. 1 to No. 1 Company.

" "	2	" "	2	" "
" "	3	" "	3	" "
" "	4	" "	4	" "
" "	5	"	Machine Gun Section.	
" "	6	"	Bombers.	
" "	7	"	Intelligence Officer.	
" "	8	"	Regimental Sergeant Major.	
" "	9	"	Orderly Room.	
" "	10	"	3rd Can. Inf. Bde.	
" "	11	"	Quartermaster and Transport Officer.	
" "	12	"	Adjutant.	
" "	13	"	War Diary.	
" "	14	"	War Diary.	



by  
Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

Appendix II/10.

Field August 23rd 1916.

Reference Sheet 1/10,000 Tr. Area.  
1/20,000 No. 27 S.E.

1. The 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade is advancing to ZUDAUSQUES and CORMETTE and will attack and capture the EARLINGHEM MILL GD. DIFQUES ridge on August 24th.
2. The 14th Battalion will fall in at 7.45 a.m. at parade ground opposite No 4 Company Bilets and will march to training area.
3. No 3 Company-O.C. Lieut Stairs, will form advance guard.
4. On arriving at area this Battalion will form up in accordance with previous instructions as per Plate X and Y.  
X Z  
No 3 Company on Right  
No 4 Company on Left  
No 2 Company in Support  
No 1 Company in reserve.
5. Machine Gunners, Scouts, Signallers will parade with their Companies.
6. Battalion Bombers- 1 Section with No 3 Company, 1 Section with No 4 Company, 2 Sections with No 1 Company, in reserve.
7. 3rd Can. T.M. Battery (less 1 section) will cooperate.
8. Assault will take place at Zero Hour.
9. 1st Wave will stop at 1st Objective, 1st enemy trench, and consolidate.  
2nd and 3rd Waves will go on to further trenches or positions.
10. The attack on 3rd Objective ( see para.3 of Scheme) will be carried out by:-  
No 1 Company on Right  
No 2 Company on Left  
No 3 Company in Support  
No 4 Company in reserve.
11. Reports, on march to head of main body,  
Reports during ~~1st~~ attack on 1st Objective to Bn. Hqrs. Q.14.C.2.2.  
during 2nd Objective- Q.20.D.3.3. Cross Roads.  
" 3rd Objective- Q.20.D.9.1.
12. Company Operation Orders must be at Battalion Headquarters by 7.a.m. and must be conveyed to all ranks before marching off parade grounds.
13. ACKNOWLEDGE.

Issued by Orderly at .....	Lieut and Adjt.,
Copy No 1 To No 1 Coy	14th Canadian Battalion.
" 2 " 2 "	
" 3 " 3 "	
" 4 " 4 "	
" 5 R.S.M.	
" 6 Quartermaster and Transport Officer	
" 7 Orderly Room	Copy No 10- 3rd Can. Inf. Bde.
" 8 Machine Gun Section	" 11. Intelligence Officer
" 9 Bombing Officer	" 12 Adjutant
	" 13 War Diary
	" 14 "





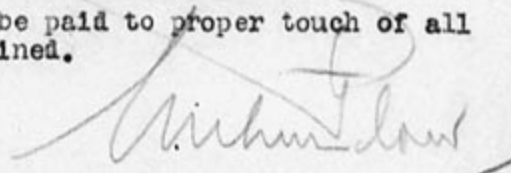
Headquarters,  
14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment,  
August 23rd 1916.

Appendix II/11.

To:- Os. C. all Companies and Details

The following extracts from Brigade Orders are sent to you for your information and action please, in connections with to-morrows operations.

1. The 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade together with the 3rd Can. M.G. Coy and 3rd T.M. Bty. will carry out operations in Liaison with No 6 Squadron R.F.C. on 24th August 1916 at 10. a.m.
2. The 14th Canadian Battalion will be formed up ready for attack at 9.30 a.m. and will move forward to the attack at 10 a.m. irrespective of the <sup>arrival of the</sup> contact patrol.
3. The Battalion will parade in marching order, without packs, the haversacks will be carried on the backs; full water-bottles, haversack rations and 120 rounds ammunition.
4. Operations will be carried according to the following notes, and all ranks will pay particular attention to the following points.
5. Every advantage to be taken of cover from view, ~~XXXXXXXX~~ ~~XXXXXXXX~~ as well as cover from fire.
6. Owing to the nature of the ground, arrangements must be made for covering fire to support each line of advance.
7. Signal Sections must be kept under cover from view, and where necessary, telephone lines or runners must be used to carry messages over the crest of a ridge which is exposed to the enemy.
8. During each phase, each Battalion will send at least three messages to Brigade Headquarters through the contact patrol.
9. The work of the forward patrols must be carefully checked by Lieut McLean, Intelligence Officer, and the siting of the forward Lewis Guns by Lieut Nesbitt, Machine Gun Officer, who will both report with rough sketch after each objective has been reached.
10. The notes by the Brigade and the Division on the last operation should be carefully studied.  
Troops will not show their discs, mirrors or flares, unless called by the aeroplane. The flares should only be used to indicate to the contact patrol when one of the objectives has been gained, and then only when called by the aeroplane
11. Particular attention must be paid to proper touch of all units and details being maintained.

  
Lieut and Adjt.,  
14th Canadian Battalion.



Appendix II/12.

Headquarters,  
14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.  
August 23rd 1916.

O. C. All Companies and Details.  
-----  
-----

For your information and action, please, the following notes, just received from Brigade, are forwarded in connection with tomorrow's operations in the Field.

1. Infantry will report immediately they locate hostile machine-guns whether in action or not.
2. The N.C.O. or Officer i/c Machine-Guns will note the times at which they bring effective fire to bear on the advancing infantry, stating also the target, location and range.

These notes will be handed to the O.C. Brigade Machine-gun Company on completion of operations.

2. On a machine-gun being located, the Officer i/c the Company will at once ask for artillery fire or trench mortar fire to be directed on the location of the hostile gun. The troops nearest this gun will be considered to be held up for ten minutes, at the expiration of which the gun will be considered out of action, and the advance may be resumed.
3. When a machine gun opens on a body of infantry, the troops on whom the fire is being brought to bear will be indicated by two VERY LIGHTS fired from the machine-gun emplacement.  
The troops within the space covered by the Very Lights will be considered to be checked.
4. If infantry observe a hostile machine gun emplacement before the gun opens fire, information of its location will be sent back to Brigade Headquarters, who will inform O.C.Bde. M.G. Company that the gun is out of action.
5. The conclusion of the 1st Phase of the operations will be signalled to the Contact Aeroplane from Brigade Headquarters by the letters A. P., and the end of the 2nd Phase by the letters B.P.

Lieutenant and Adjutant,  
14th Canadian Battalion.



Headquarters,  
14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.  
August 23rd 1916.

Appendix II/13.

O. C. All Companies and Details.

The following copy of Scheme received from Brigade is forwarded to you for your information and action, please, in connection with tomorrow's operations:-

Scheme for August 24th.

Reference Sheet 1/10,000 Tr. Area.  
1/20,000 27 S.E.

Operation. 1. The 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade is advancing to ZUDAUSQUES and CORMETTE and will attack and capture the BARLINGHEM MILL - GRAND DIFQUES RIDGE on August 24th..

Form of 2. Battalion sx will be formed up for attack according to Plate Attack. "X" under cover S.E. of the INGLINGHEM ROAD.

15th Bn. on the right, supported by one Section 3rd Can. TM. Bty.  
16th Bn. in the centre " " " " " " " "  
14th Bn. on the left " " " " " " " "  
13th Bn. in Bde. Reserve

Objectives 3. 1st OBJECTIVE. The high ground and forward slopes between P.24.c. and Q.20.a. commanding the PETIT DIFQUES - MORINGHEM ROAD.

2nd OBJECTIVE. The villages of MORINGHEM and PETIT DIFQUES.

3rd OBJECTIVE. The high ground BARLINGHEM MILL to Q.27.a. S.E. of GD. DIFQUES, and such positions on the forward slopes as will command the valley Q.32.a. to Q.27.c.

Frontages. 4. Frontages allotted to Battalions are approximately as follows

15th Battalion Right Flank INGLINGHEM-MORINGHEM Road incl.  
Left Flank track from Q.19.c. to Q. 25.b. and continued thence to the BARLINGHEM MILL

The 15th Bn. will be responsible for the capture of MORINGHEM Village, E of the road INGLINGHEM-MORINGHEM and the high ground from the area boundary up to and including the MILL

16th Bn. Right Flank exclusive of track.  
Left Flank Along a line drawn approximately parallel to the track and running from the "S" in DIFQUES to a point Q.13.c.9.1 $\frac{1}{2}$ .

The 16th Bn. will be responsible for the capture of that portion of PETIT DIFQUES about the cross roads and as far as their left flank, and the high ground from the BARLINGHEM MILL exclusive to the GRAND DIFQUES-CORMETTE Road.

14th Bn. Right Flank same as left flank of the 16th Bn.  
Left flank road running from X Roads Q.13.d. to Q.20.b.

The 14th Bn will be responsible for the capture of the remainder of PETIT DIFQUES, GRAND DIFQUES, and the high ground between the GRAND DIFQUES-CORMETTE ROAD and the N.E. boundary of the Training area running through Q.27 a.

Troops are not to pass through crops outside the boundaries of the training area.

- 5  
 The 1st phase of the operations will end with the capture of MORINGHEM - PETIT DIFQUES ( and will be completed by 11.30 am)
- 1st Phase.
- 2nd phase Bns. will then rally their companies, and reform for the attack on the 3rd objective, which will form the 2nd phase of the operations.
- The signal for the assault on this ridge will be given by the 16th Bn. when both the 14th and 15th Bns. have reported they are ready.  
 The assault should take place not later than 12.15 p.m.
6. The Bn in Bde reserve (13th) will be concentrated in the quarries Q.14.a and will be prepared to support the centre or left of the attack.
- Bde. Reserve
7. O.C. 3rd Can. T.M. Bty. will detail one section each to support the right and left attacks.
- T.M. Battery.
8. 3rd Can. M.G. Coy will act as a hostile force and will oppose the advance of the 3rd Can Infy Bde. acting under orders issued separately.  
 Men of this unit will wear white arm bands.  
 As no ammunition is being used, the O.C. 3rd Can. M.G. Coy. will arrange to indicate the positions of his guns by a small white flag, or strip of canvas.  
 O.C. 3rd Can. M.G. Coy. will report to Bde M.Qrs. after operations on the visibility of troops, and especially signal stations.
- 3rd Can. M.G. Coy.
9. Bde. report centre will be at the X roads Q.10.a.8.9. during the 1st phase, and at Q.19.d.3.2. during the 2nd Phase.  
 If a bugle calls halt, all ranks will stand fast, until another advance is sounded.
10. In the event of a Battalion being held up, or a unit pushing some distance in advance, O.C. units must be prepared to form a defensive flank.
11. On the final objective being gained, troops will stand fast until the order to dismiss has been given them.
12. Bn. Commanders, O.C. T.M. Bty. and M.G. Coy. will meet the Brigadier at the BARLINGHEM MILL after the operations.

Lieut and Adjt.,  
 14th Canadian Battalion.



Appendix II/14.

Headquarters,  
14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment,  
August 27th 1916.

Tog- Os. C. all Companies and Details.

The following notes are issued for your information and action please.

- (1) Units must adhere strictly to schedule time.
- (2) March discipline to be maintained at all times.
- (3) Should a break-down of transport or other unexpected accident cause a block every effort must be made to clear road as quickly as possible.
- (4) All units, at all times, (especially during halts) will keep as close as possible to right of road.
- (5) Units are responsible for reconnoitring their routes to ST OMER and for having competent guides with each party to direct them to entraining point.
- (6) Men to be told off to their cars and properly marched in.
- (7) An N.C.O. to be responsible for each car.
- (8) Two men only per horse car. No smoking in horse cars.
- (9) No riding on top of carriages, nor are men to be allowed to sit with their legs over the open car door.
- (10) Water bottles to be examined prior to departure, and to contain water or tea only.

Lieut and Adjt.,  
14th Canadian Battalion.





by  
 Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

Appendix II/15.

Field August 26th 1916.

**MOVEMENT** 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will move by road to ST OMER thence by rail to RESERVE ARMY AREA on August 27th 1916.

**ENTRAINING & DETRAINING** 2. The entraining station will be ST OMER and the detraining station CONTEVILLE. The 14th BATTALION will proceed by TRAIN NO 26.

**TIME OF ARRIVAL AT ENTRAINING STATION** 3. The whole of the Transport and Quartermaster's Stores and No 4 Company will leave billets at 4.03 p.m. and arrive at the entraining station at 7.03 p.m. The balance of the Battalion will arrive at 8.33 p.m. Entrainment must be completed by 9.33 p.m. and train departs at 10.03 p.m.

**REPORTING AT STATION** 4. On arrival at the entraining station the O.C. each unit or portion of a unit will report to the Staff Officer superintending entraining.

**RATIONS** 5. Each unit will entrain with the current day's rations or unexpired portion, and rations for the following day carried in the train wagons which accompany the unit.

**DRESS** 6. Full marching order, as per method adopted by this Battalion, filled water bottles, 120 rounds S.A.A. per man.

**LOADING IN BRAKE VANS** 7. No personnel or stores will be allowed in the Brake van which is at each end of the train.

**PICQUETS** 8. No 1 Company will detail a picquet of 1 Officer and 25 N.C.Os. and men to report to the Entraining Officer at the station at 6.48 p.m. They will be on duty during the whole period of the journey. This picquet will be posted at the Entraining Station under instructions of the Entraining Officer to prevent men wandering away or leaving the train after entrainment is completed.

Immediately the train stops at an intermediate stopping place, a part of the picquet will be posted at each end of the train and elsewhere as necessary to prevent men leaving the train except for the purposes of nature, and to ensure that men leaving for this reason rejoin at once.

On arrival at the Detraining Station, the picquet will be posted to prevent men wandering away from the precincts of the station.

**BILLETING OFFICER** 9. Lieut. W. Sharp, No 4 Company, will be Billeting Officer for the Battalion.

**AUTHORITY OF R.T.O.** 10. Any instructions which may be given by the R.T.O. with regard to entraining or detraining must be implicitly obeyed by all ranks.

**PARADE.** 11. The Battalion (less No 4 Company) will fall in on No 4 Company's parade ground at 5.00 p.m. and take the following route:-

By road running from EPERLECQUES to main MOULLE-ST OMER Road debouching on to latter at road junction N.E. of M. in NORTLEQLINGHEM.

**MARCH DISCIPLINE** 12. All units must keep proper distance and dressing, at all times, whether marching at attention or not.

Pay all compliments, by platoons, on the march.

Keep to the right of the road.

No smoking while marching.

10 minutes rest will be given before each clock hour during which time troops may smoke.

March DIS-  
CIPLINE contd.

12. Water bottles to be filled but no water to be drunk unless authorized by the Medical Officer or an Officer of the man's unit. Bottles to be inspected before start of march; any spirituous liquors to be emptied. Cross Roads to be kept clear when a halt is ordered. Platoon Commanders to march in rear of their platoons.

13. ACKNOWLEDGE.

*[Signature]*  
Lieut and Adjutant,  
14th Canadian Battalion.

- Copy No 1 to No 1 Company
- " 2 " 2 "
  - " 3 " 3 "
  - " 4 " 4 "
  - " 5 to R.S.M.
  - " 6 Machine Gun Officer
  - " 7 Bombing Officer
  - " 8 Intelligence Officer
  - " 9 Adjutant
  - " 10 Orderly Room
  - " 11 3rd Can. Inf. Bde.
  - " 12 Quartermaster and Transport Officer
  - " 13 War Diary
  - " 14 "

14. The Battalion (less No 4 Company) will fall in on No 4 Company's parade ground at 8.00 a.m. and take the following route:-

By road running from BERRINGTON to main MOBILE-27. Road depending on whether at road junction N.E. of A. in NORTH BERRINGTON.

15. All units must keep proper distance and spacing, at all times, whether marching at attention or not. Pay all compliments by platoons, on the march. No smoking while marching. 15 minutes rest will be given before each of 2 hours during which time troops may smoke.

16. Any instructions which may be given by the B.T.O. with reference to marching or training must be implicitly obeyed by all ranks.

17. Lieut W. Sharp, No 4 Company, will be acting as Officer for the Battalion.

18. Immediately the train stops at an intermediate stopping place, a part of the platoon will be posted at each end of the train and elsewhere as necessary to prevent men leaving the train except for the purpose of nature, and to ensure that men leaving for this reason rejoin at once.

19. On arrival at the Detaining Station, the platoon will be posted to prevent men wandering away from the precincts of the station.

20. The platoon will be posted at the Detaining Station to prevent men wandering away or leaving the train after the period of the journey. This platoon will be posted at the station to report to the Detaining Officer at the B.T.O. and men to report to the Detaining Officer at the B.T.O. and men to report to the Detaining Officer at the B.T.O.



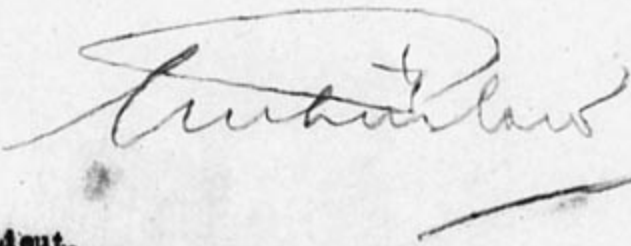
## OPERATION ORDERS NO 78

by  
 Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

Appendix II/16

Field August 28th 1916.

- MOVEMENT** 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will march from the DOMQUEUR area to billets in the "R" area. on August 29th.
- PARADE.** 2. Battalion will fall in in full marching order in usual order of march at 8.00 a.m. sharp
- BILLETING OFFICER.** 3. Lieut W. Sharp (mounted) No 4 Company will met Brigade Staff Captain at the "H" in HALTE, S. of PERNOIS. at 8.30 a.m.
- BILLETING PARTY** 4. A billeting party consisting of 1 N.C.O. from each platoon and 1 N.C.O. from each unit including Headquarters and Transport will leave Battalion Headquarters at 6.00 a.m.
- Officer i/c Lieut W.J. Holliday, who with his party will report to the Billeting Officer at 10.30 a.m. at the "S" of LE SOUDET.
- RATIONS.** 5. All men must carry their unexpended rations with them and have their water bottles filled. At the halt, at approximately 10.50 a.m. the men will use their mid-day rations
- MARCH DISCIPLINE TRANSPORTS.** 6. The strictest march discipline must be adhered to.
7. The transports of Brigade units will be Brigaded. Field Kitchens will accompany Battalions in the march.
- OFFICERS' BAGGAGE** 8. Officers' kits, mess equipment etc. and Details cooking utensils must be ready for transport at 7.30 A.M.
- MEALS.** 9. The Quartermaster will arrange to have dinner served to the men immediately on arrival at billets ( about 1 to 1.30)
- SYNCHRONIZ-10. ATION OF WATCHES.** Watches will be synchronized at 8.00 P.M. tonight.
- BILLETS.** 11. All billets may be left thoroughly clean and receipt obtained for same. No parties to clean up for any other purpose to be left behind.
12. ACKNOWLEDGE.

  
 Lieut.  
 Adj. 14th. Canadian Battalion.

by  
 Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

Appendix II/16

Field August 28th 1916.

- MOVEMENT** 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will march from the DOMQUEUR area to billets in the "R" area. on August 29th.
- PARADE.** 2. Battalion will fall in in full marching order in usual order of march at 8.00 a.m. sharp.
- BILLETING OFFICER.** 3. Lieut W. Sharp (mounted) No 4 Company will met Brigade Staff Captain at the "H" in HALTE, S. of PERNOIS. at 8.30 a.m.
- BILLETING PARTY** 4. A billeting party consisting of 1 N.C.O. from each platoon and 1 N.C.O. from each unit including Headquarters and Transport will leave Battalion Headquarters at 6.00 a.m.
- Officer i/c Lieut W.J. Holliday, who with his party will report to the Billeting Officer at 10.30 a.m. at the "S" of LE SOUDET.
- RATIONS.** 5. All men must carry their unexpended rations with them and have their water bottles filled. At the halt, at approximately 10.50 a.m. the men will use their mid-day rations
- MARCH DISCIPLINE** 6. The strictest march discipline must be adhered to.
- TRANSPORTS.** 7. The transports of Brigade units will be Brigaded. Field Kitchens will accompany Battalions in the march.
- OFFICERS' BAGGAGE** 8. Officers' kits, mess equipment etc. and Details cooking utensils must be ready for transport at 7.30 A.M.
- MEALS.** 9. The Quartermaster will arrange to have dinner served to the men immediately on arrival at billets ( about 1 to 1.30)
- SYNCHRONIZATION OF WATCHES.** 10. Watches will be synchronized at 8.00 P.M. tonight.
- BILLETS.** 11. All billets may be left thoroughly clean and receipt obtained for same. No parties to clean up for any other purpose to be left behind.
12. ACKNOWLEDGE.

  
 Lieut.  
 Adj. 14th. Canadian Battalion.



By  
 Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

Appendix II/17

Field August 29th 1916.

- MOVEMENT.** 1. The 14TH CANADIAN BATTALION will march from billets in the HALLOY and LE FERNOIS AREA to LA VICOIGNE, on August 30th, 1916, and go into bivouacs.
- PARADE.** 2. The battalion will parade in full marching order, at 8.30. a. m. in the usual order of march, with head of column on road at Battalion Headquarters.
- BILLETING OFFICER.** 3. Lt. W. SHARP (Billeting Officer) mounted, will meet Staff Captain at the southern entrance to LA VICOIGNE at 8.30. a. m. on the TALMAS - LA VICOIGNE ROAD.
- BILLETING PARTY.** 4. One N. C. O. from each Platoon and one from each Detail, including Transport and Headquarters, i/c Lt. W. J. HOLLIDAY, will leave Battalion Headquarters at 7 a. m. and meet Billeting Officer at 10 a. m. at the point mentioned in para. (3). Billeting party will meet Battalion at point mentioned in para. (3) and guide units to destinations.
- SYNCHRONIZATION OF WATCHES.** 5. Watches will be synchronized at 10 p. m. to-night and again at 9.30. a. m. August 30th.
- OFFICERS BAGGAGE.** 6. Officers baggage, details mess utensils, etc., will be collected as follows, - No. 1 Company, Bombers, Machine gun, 7.30. a. m. - Headquarters and balance of units, 8 a. m.
- MARCH DISCIPLINE.** 7. The strictest march discipline must be observed and every effort made to prevent men falling out on the line of march, irrespective of the distance traversed. Straggling is a grave reflection on the training and discipline of the Regiment, and must cease.
- MEALS.** 8. Companies and Details will be served by the Company Travelling kitchens, as per schedule already issued. Quartermaster will arrange to have a hot meal ready for the men immediately after their arrival in billets.
9. Acknowledges

Lieutenant  
 Adjutant, 14th Canadian Battalion

Issued at 9.30. p. m. by Orderly

Copy No. 1 to No. 1 Co.  
 2 No. 2 Co.  
 3 No. 3 Co.  
 4 No. 4 Co.  
 5 Machine gun  
 6 Bombers  
 7 Intelligence  
 8 R. S. M.  
 9 Orderly Room  
 10 Brigade  
 11 Q. M. and T. O.  
 12 Adjt.  
 13 War Diary  
 14 " "





by  
 Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

Appendix II/18

Field August 30th 1916.

- MOVEMENT** 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will march from LAVICOGNE to VADENCOURT area on August 31st via route TALMAS-RUBEMPRE-HERISSART.
- PARADE** 2. The Battalion will parade in full marching order ready to move off at 7.30 a.m. Head of column at No 4 Company's billets.
- TRANSPORT** 3. n Transport will be Brigaded with the exception of Travelling Kitchens and Watercarts which accompany Battalions. column  
 Head of Brigade Transport will pass Road Junction BOISMONSIEUR at 8.29 a.m.
- BILLETING** 4. Lieut W. SHARP will report to staff Captain at 6.30 p.m. to-night at CONTAY at the MAIRIE.
- BILLETING PARTY** 5. Lieut. W.J. HOLLIDAY, one N.C.O. from each platoon and one from each Detail including, Headquarters, Transport and Quartermaster Stores will leave Battalion Headquarters at 6 a.m. and meet Lieut. W. SHARP at the Camp Commandant's Office at VADENCOURT. They will meet ~~their~~ their units at this point and guide them to their destinations
- SYNCHRONIZATION OF WATCHES.** 6. Watches will be synchronized at 8 p.m. to-night and 8.30 a.m. to-morrow.
- OFFICERS' BAGGAGE** 7. Officers' Baggage, Details' Mess utensils etc. will be collected at 6.45 a.m.
- MEALS.** 8. All units will be served by Travelling Kitchens as per schedule issued by Quartermaster who will arrange for a hot meal to be ready immediately upon arrival at destination.
9. ACKNOWLEDGE.

Lieut and Adjt.,  
 14th Canadian Battalion.

Copy No. 1 to No 1 Company  
 " 2 " 2 "  
 " 3 " 3 "  
 " 4 " 4 "  
 " 5 to R.S.M.  
 " 6 Machine Gun Officer  
 " 7 Bombing Officer  
 " 8 Intelligence Officer  
 " 9 Quartermaster and Transport Officer.  
 " 10 Adjutant  
 " 11 Orderly Room  
 " 12 Can. Inf. Bde.  
 " 13 War Diary  
 " 14 "

Copy No.....

Amendments to Operation Orders No 81

SECRET

by

Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.  
-----

Field August 30th 1916.

STARTING  
POINT

1. Head of Battalion, 100 yards S. of Brigade Headquarters ( i.e. Opposite No 1 Company's Billets.

ROUTE

2. Via FME. du ROSEL - Le VAL de MAISON, HERRISSART.

TRANSPORT

3. Headquarters Officers' Mess Wagon will accompany Battalion.

All other orders unchanged.

ACKNOWLEDGE.

Lieut and Adjt.,  
14th Canadian Battalion.



COPY.

Intel. Report

1/8/18.

14th Canadian Battalion.

Appendix III/1

General Information.

- (1) Our Snipers broke five periscopes during day. Stokes Gun fired 5 rounds.
- (2) Patrol out reports nothing unusual.

Enemy's Activity.

- (1) Attitude very quiet.
- (2) One or two large T.M. Bombs in vicinity of Cutting.

Enemy's Defences.

- (1) New sandbags placed on parapet at I. 35. a. 3. 5.

Communications.

Enemy balloon seen to go up about dusk in direction of ZANDVOORDE (approximate) and later a steady white light was noticed which corresponded to position of balloon. It was very high.

Aircraft Movement.

Enemy plane flew over our sector in morning and afternoon both times at great height. Our planes were active during morning.

Weather very poor for observation, being foggy until 9.30 a.m. and heat waves prevented observation until 5. p.m.

(Signed) A. L. McLean,  
Lieutenant.



Intelligence Report.  
14th Canadian Battalion.

2/8/16.  
7 p.m.

*Appendix III/2*

General Information.

(1) Our 18 pounders did considerable firing at intervals during night on enemy back country. 42 Rifle Grenades were fired during 24 hours. Machine Gun in GRAND FLEET STREET fired at intervals during night on I. 35. b. 9 $\frac{1}{2}$ . 9 $\frac{1}{2}$ .. Machine Guns also fired on enemy parapets. Snipers broke several enemy periscopes, no other targets observed during day.

(2) Patrol went out in front of RAVINE and entered old crater. No activity whatever heard either in front or in enemy trench. Patrol then worked to the left coming in about trench 34 left. Went out again left of Trench 37 and Trench 38 and also visited Listening Post in front of trench 36 and 35. No signs of enemy.

Enemy Activity.

(1) Attitude quiet, but alert.  
(2) A few 4.1 H.M. shrapnel over GRAND FLEET STREET about 6.30 p.m. Machine Guns active at night, one gun firing at least one belt at our wiring party in front of trench 35. Sniping negligible.

Enemy Defences.

(1) Ends of new timbers visible at I. 29. c. 8. 1.. New sandbags on parapet at I. 34. b. 8 $\frac{1}{2}$ . 2. and I. 35. a. 2. 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ . I. 35. a. 0. 2. appears to be a false parapet. Overhead covering being put on trench at I. 34. d. 1. 6.  
(2) New Sandbags and sap at I. 35. a. 5. 7. and sap through parapet at I. 35. a. 4. 6.  
(3) Sniping and observation post seen at I. 34. d. 1. 7.  
(4) Sluice Board and blue clay visible at I. 29. c. 8. 1., possibly mine head.

Enemy Movements etc.

(1) About I. 36. central, 44 of enemy passed screen at this point during day. Dress - Service uniform and cap.  
(5) One man without cap seen walking along trench at I. 34. d. 2. 7..

Aircraft Movement.

About 20 to 25 of our planes crossed enemy lines in early afternoon.

Miscellaneous.

6 gun rifle battery trained on screen about I. 36. central was fired at intervals during night.

(Signed) A. L. McLean,  
Lieutenant.





Intelligence Report.

3/8/16.

14th Canadian Battalion.

Appendix  
III/3

General Information.

(1). Our Field Guns were rather active at intervals during 24 hours. Heavies fired a number of rounds about 4.30 p.m. well back of enemy lines 90 rifle grenades were fired during 24 hours.. Machine Gun in GRAND FLEET STREET enfiladed tramway at I. 36. a. 4, 5, to 8. 4. during night. Machine Guns dispersed working party opposite Trench 36. No opportunity for sniping occurred except that several periscopes were hit. 2" T.M.S. fired 12 rounds and Stokes 53.

(2) Patrol covered ground in front of T. 33 to within 15 yards of enemy wire. No result. Also located position for new Listening Posts in front of Trenches 36, 37, and Junction of trenches 36 and 35.. Enemy wire examined in front of trench 35 in good condition about 30 feet wide mostly rolls of concertina barbed.

Enemy's Activity.

(1) .. Attitude normal.

(2) About 50 rounds 77 mm. shrapnel in out sector and 5 salvos 4.1 H.E. in vicinity of Battalion Headquarters and RAVINE. Enemy sent over a few T.M. bombs near trench 36 and rear trench 33 about 7.30 p.m. Machine Guns quiet, Practically no sniping.

Enemy Defences.

(1) Working party of 4 men repairing C.T. at I. 34. d. 1. 5. at 5 a.m. I. 34. d. 2. 5. new sandbags on C. T. I. 35. a. 4. 5. new sandbags on parapet. At I. 36. a. 6. 7. to a. 3. 4. new earth can be seen from time to time apparently trench deepening. Two exposed sections of concrete appear in enemy parapet at I. 34. b. 8. 3. and I. 29. c. 8. 1. each apparently laid bare by shell or T.M. The latter has about two feet concrete on top with steel rail laid in it parallel to trench. A steel plate about 2' by 18" is visible on outside about the middle of the work and probable covers opening. A periscope projects above it. Several square openings low down in enemy parapet opposite T.37 are visible. Two appear to be fairly new. They appear to be from 12" to 15" square. No reason for them is apparent.

(3) There is a small sandbag parapet low down and close to enemy parapet inside his wire at I. 34. b. 7. 2. most likely Listening Post.

(5) Large minenwerfer was observed firing about 7.30 p.m. on left of Cutting. Gun seems to be at about I. 29. d. C. 1; probably at end of Tramway. One shell failed to explode.

Enemy's Movements etc.

(5) .. At I. 35. a. 1. 1. a man wearing a Jaeger Uniform and carrying a telescope was seen at 5.30 a.m. and again at 8.15 a.m.

(6) At I. 35. d. 2. 3. several puffs of light smoke were seen at about 4 p.m.

Aircraft Movement.

Enemy planes active during early morning and afternoon very high up.

(Signed) A. L. McLean,

Lieutenant.



Intelligence Report.

4/8/16  
Appendix III/4

14th Canadian Battalion.

Our Operations.

(1) Our artillery was very active between 10 and 12 p.m. last night and at intervals during yesterday. W<sup>a</sup> fired 2-100 rifle grenades during 24 hours. Our Machine Guns were active and indirect fire was used on tramway near HILL 60. Snipers broke 10 periscopes of which three are a great many being used in enemy front line. Stokes Guns fired 275 rounds with good effect. T.M. (2") fired 99 rounds mostly in vicinity of CATERPILLAR.

(2) Patrol of 1 Sergeant and three men went out in front of Trench 33 and entered a shell crater about 10 feet in diameter at bottom and 6 feet deep. There was an entrance to an underground sap 3 feet wide and 4 feet high which led to German trench. When patrol entered hole none of enemy were seen, but board was pushed away and simultaneously a light was fired from trench landing close to patrol and throwing them into relief. Two Germans then attempted to bayonet the Sergeant and one man who were in the hole, but both were shot with revolvers one actually lunging over the Sergeant's shoulder and running into his revolver. A third man was shot through the back by another of patrol who was leaning down over entrance to sap. The Sergeant and man in the hole then emptied their revolvers into sap at Germans inside and climbed out of hole. Groans were heard but more Germans came out of sap and started throwing bombs in all directions, while bombs were being thrown and rifle and machine gun fire kept up from enemy trench. Patrol estimates that there were at least a dozen in sap having evidently heard patrol at first and were waiting for them. Patrol returned to trench at 1.50 a.m. having fired 18 rounds in all. Location of Post appears to be about I. 34. b. 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ . Patrol of 1 N.C.O. and three men went out in front of trench 39 reporting no sign of enemy.

Enemy's Activity.

(1) Attitude nervous especially after mine was sprung at HILL 60.  
(2) Artillery consisted of four salvos 4.1 H.E. about 8.15 p.m. near PETTICOAT LANE and foot of THORNE STREET and a few rounds 77 mm. shrapnel left of GRAND FLEET STREET. Also about 7 to 10 salvos 4.1 as above between 10 and 12 p.m. Balance consisted of not more than 2 Batteries 77 mm. firing mostly shrapnel over our front and support lines. Two very small H.E. shells landed near Battalion Headquarters during ~~xxxx~~ retaliation for our bombardment, effect very local but containing considerable phosphorous. These shells seem smaller than their field Gun, but otherwise much the same, might be anti-aircraft guns. Enemy retaliated to our bombardment last night with T.M. and Rifle Grenades and considerable Machine Gun and rifle fire. Some large minenwerfers near Trenches 38 and 37.

Enemy Defences

(1) Enemy seemed to be deepening or clearing trench at I. 34. a. 1. 6. to 1. 3, as broken timbers, old sandbags and earth was being thrown over parapet just after dawn. At same point at 9 a.m. carrying party was seen carrying in timbers. I. 29. c. 8. 0. Two men throwing earth over parapet at 8.15 a.m. Sandbags have been re-arranged at S.P. already reported at I. 34. d. 1. 7. A man's arm was seen with hammer nailing boards over trench apparently making some kind of overhead cover at I. 29. a. 8 $\frac{1}{2}$ . 2. at 4.30 p.m. Trenches in this vicinity seem to be pretty badly damaged also in front of CATERPILLAR. Enemy seems to be deepening trench from I. 34. d. 8. 2. to 6. 3. new earth being visible in front of parapet and on top of parados. Wire and trenches damaged at I. 35. a. 5. 6. Carrying party seen with very long timbers at I. 34. b. 5. 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ .  
(3) S. P.'s. at I. 29. c. 8. 1., I. 35. a. 6. 7 $\frac{1}{2}$ . and I. 35. a. 6 $\frac{1}{2}$ . 8 $\frac{1}{2}$ . the latter in grass behind front line.  
(13) About 3 coils of unbarbed accordion wire thrown out during night at I. 29. 8. 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ . only one peg served to hold it.

Communications.

Four enemy planes crossed our lines at 8.40 p.m. and 10 minutes later two returned one of them dropping three lights to right of "BLUFF" at about thirty second intervals, which broke into star clusters.

Equipment.

(1) Pieces of 4.1 shells burst near Battalion Headquarters bear signs of considerable phosphorous in the metal of the casing.

Aircraft movement.

Enemy plane flew over our area in early morning and also at night as above.

(Signed) A. L. McLean,

Lieutenant.



5/8/16.

14th Canadian Battalion.General Information.

- (1) Our Artillery (18 pounders) were very active on enemy C. T's, etc. all night and also during the day. We fired 104 rifle grenades with very little retaliation in kind. Machine Gun used indirect fire on I. 35. b. 7. 8 $\frac{1}{2}$  where tramway crosses trench and also enfilading trench beyond to I. 35. b. 9 $\frac{1}{2}$ . 9. This gun seems to be effective as enemy searches periodically for it with field guns. Brigade Machine Guns used indirect fire on Bridges across Canal and in HOLLEBEKE CHAU Grounds. Our snipers caused enemy working party at I. 36. b. 6. C. to cease work. One of our snipers in exchange of fire with enemy sniper at I. 34. b. 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ . 2. was fired on by Machine Gun and slightly wounded. Stokes Guns fired 41 shells and 2" T.Ms. 2 during past 24 hours.
- (2) Patrol (see advance report this date.)

Enemy activity.

- (1) Attitude quiet, confining his activity principally to retaliation.
- (2) Artillery in our area confined to 77 mm. in early evening about 10 or 12 rounds between GRAND FLEET STREET and PETTICOAT LANE apparently directed at Machine Gun firing on HILL 60. He later fired 2 or 3 rounds on two occasions at same vicinity, and 12 rounds T. 37 and 37S about 2 p.m. About 18 - 20 rifle grenades fell near T. 35 and 35S. Sniping negligible. Enemy fired about 30 large minenwerfers during afternoon, about 90% to left of CUTTING the remainder in rear of 38 and left of 37.

Enemy Defences:

- (1) Working parties on enemy wire opposite T. 38 were dispersed three times during night. I. 29. c. S. 1. Working party repairing trench at 8 p.m. Last night working party seen building barricade and revetting trench at I. 29. c. S. 1. Party repairing C. T. at I. 36. b. 6. C. stopped by snipers. Working Party of 5 men carrying shovels passed screen at Q. 36. b. O. 3. at 9 a.m.
- (3) I. 35. - a. O. 2. - suspected Listening Post.
- (5) During enemy minenwerfer bombardment in afternoon 3 separate guns seemed to be firing, one from behind HILL 60 (supposed location reported yesterday) and two roughly opposite Ts. 36 and 37. One of latter was closely observed and emplacement fixed in angle of support trench at I. 35. a. 3. 4. Aeroplane photograph would seem to confirm this.
- (6) A distinct vibration was felt throughout our area at 3.30 p.m. which appeared to be a mine exploding at some distance or a small blast underground. Sentry on listening machine on left T. 35 (PEAK) thought he heard picking underneath. This has not been confirmed yet.
- (13) Enemy's wire seems to be damaged opposite left T. 37 and T. 38.

Artillery.

Two enemy balloons up about 3 p.m. were drawn down on approach of one of our planes before bearings were taken. One was about due S.E. of T. 36.

Aeroplanes.

Enemy plane flew low over our line at 6.30 a.m. from HILL 60 to beyond the "BLUFF". He made several circles covering this ground.

(Signed) A. L. McLean,

Lieutenant.



Intelligence Report.

Appendix III/6  
6/8/16.

4th Canadian Battalion

General Information.

- (1) During night our 18 pounders fired at intervals upon the enemy back country. 78 Rifle Grenades were fired during the 24 hours. Machine Guns fired on the enemy trenches. Machine Gun in GRAND FLEET STREET active during night. One enemy sniper was killed and two small working parties dispersed by our snipers. 3 Trench Mortars in direction of Caterpillar.
- (2) Patrol examined enemy wire in front of trench 36 and found it cut up by artillery fire.

Enemy Activity.

- (1) Attitude - Quiet.
- (2) Four Salvos of 4.1 H.E. and shrapnel over GRAND FLEET STREET at 8.15 a.m. Machine Guns Active, Sniping T.Ms and Patrols - Nil.

Enemy Defences.

- (1) The damage caused yesterday by our artillery and Stokes Guns has for the most part been repaired. Several new sniping plates have been put in parapet. Location I. 35. a. 6.6. at 5.45 p.m. of the 5th inst. a party of nine men was seen carrying timbers. Location I. 35.a.2.3. at 8.05 a.m. two men working with shovels deepening trench. Location Im34.a.3.2; from 4.30 to 7.30 a.m. a working party of about 60 men digging a Communication Trench--Artillery notified.
- (5) Machine Gun Emplacement at I. 35. 33 6.7.
- (6) Sounds of mining were heard at/and under the right of trench 37. Listeners from the Tunnelling Company were unable to hear anything this afternoon.

Enemy's Movements.

- (5) Location I. 36. central. At 8.25 last evening a large party of men passed along C.T. in front of screen, going toward front line. It took five minutes for party to pass. Only heads and rifles were visible. Rifle battery fire was opened on this party (a registered one)

Communications.

At 3.20 p.m. a pigeon was seen to fly from behind our lines over the enemy's-lines in a north-easterly direction.

Artillery.

- (2) Location of Balloons - 5, 24, 55, 129, 141 and 206 degrees. True bearings taken from I. 34-b. 9.6.

Aircraft.

At 6.15 a.m. and 6.30 p.m. two aeroplanes were driven off by Artillery.

(Signed) Arthur Plow,

Lieutenant and Adjutant.





Appendix IV/1.

CASUALTIES.

14th Canadian Battalion - Royal Montreal Regiment.

AUGUST, 1916.

-----ooOoo-----

August 1st.

Captain James Fellowes Adams - Wounded. *by Rifle Grenade*  
1 O.R. wounded.  
2 O.R. Accidentally wounded.

August 2nd.

Lieutenant William Lawrence McCormack - Shell Shock.  
2 O.R. wounded.

August 3rd.

2 O.R. Killed.  
1 O.R. died of wounds.  
22 O.R. wounded.

August 4th.

1 O.R. Killed.  
6 O.R. slightly wounded.

August 5th.

3 O.R. Killed.  
7 O.R. wounded.

August 6th.

Lieutenant Richard Henry Hood - Wounded. *by Rifle Grenade.*  
5 O.R. Wounded.

August 7th.

1 O.R. wounded.



*Dean*

APPENDIX "B".

to Defence Scheme Trenches 33 - 38.

I  
Disposition.

The Disposition of the troops garrisoning the area remains the same, with the exception that one platoon of the Company occupying 33, 33S, 34 and part of 34S, has been removed from the front line and now occupies a position in the "R" trench right of DEANSGATE. There is room for another platoon in the "R" Trench and there will shortly be room for an entire Company, which, under normal conditions, is the Disposition recommended. During the present tour (July 31st - August 6th) such a large number of men have been taken for working parties that it has not been advisable to further weaken the front line by placing more platoons in the "R" Trench.

II  
Machine Guns.

The number of Machine Gun Positions has been increased to eight as per map attached.

III  
Battalion Headquarters.

The location of Headquarters remains as before, GRAND FLEET STREET, but additional and safer accommodation has been made in the immediate vicinity of the old Headquarters.

IV.  
Mining.

Mining has been suspected under Trench 33 and Dispositions have been made accordingly.  
Mining is also suspected under Trench 37, but the reports on this are contradictory.

Lieutenant-Colonel,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion.







WAR DIARY

14th Canadian Bn. 1st Cdn. Division,

from 1st to 30th September, 1916.

Volume 19.

Diary Text

5 Pages.

- Appendix II/1 O.O. No. 82, by Lieut. Col. R.P. Clark dated the 1st September, March of 14th Cdn. Bn. from ~~BRICK~~ VADENCOURT to BRICKFIELDS on September 1st, 1916.
- " II/2 O.O. No. 82 a by Lieut. Col. R.P. Clark commanding 14th Cdn. Bn. dated the 7th September, 1916, march of 3rd Cdn. Inf. Bde. from present billets to WARLOY September 9th, via the track South of SEMLIS.
- " II/3 O.O. No. 83 dated the 9th September, by Lieut. Col. R.P. CLARK commanding 14th Cdn. Bn. dated the 9th September, March of 14th Cdn. Bn. from their present billets to HERISSART via VADENCOURT and CONTAY on the 10th September, 1916.
- " II/4 O.O. No. 84 dated the 10th September, 1916, March of 14th Canadian Bn. to MONTRELET on September 11th, via le VAL de Maison Fue de ROSEL VALHEUREUX-BONNEVILLE etc.
- " II/5 O.O. No. 85 dated the 15th September, 1916. March of 14th Canadian Bn. from LAVECOGNE to VADENCOURT on the 16th September
- " II/6 O.O. No. 86 dated the 18th September, 1916, move of 14th Cdn. Bn. to the BRICKFIELDS area on Sept. 18th
- " II/7 O.O. No. 87 dated the 23rd September, 1916. Relief of 4th Cdn. Bn. by 14th Cdn. Bn. in Bde. support on the 23rd September.
- " II/8 O.O. No. 87 A by Lieut. Col. R.P. Clark dated the 24th September, move of 14th Cdn. Bn. into close support on the night of 24th September.
- " II/9 O.O. No. 87 dated the 26th September, march of 14th Cdn. Bn. from their present billets to WARLOY on Sept. 28th.
- " IV/1 Operations Sept. 6/8th 1916 Somme Salient.
- " IV/2 Operations SOMME SALIENT September 26/27th, 28th 1916, 14th Cdn. Bn. Royal Montreal Regt.



14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR

DIARY

SEPTEMBER

1916.

TEXT.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

September, 1916.

Page 1.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date 1916	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	2	Remarks and references to Appendices
MARCH FROM VAUGHNCOURT TO BRICKFIELDS.	Sept. 1st.		<p>Fine day - cloudy towards the evening. Battalion resumed the march commenced on the 28th ultimo. "Fall In" 1.15 p.m., arrived Brigade rendezvous 1.30 p.m., and marched to the BRICKFIELDS, N.W. of ALBERT, arriving there at 4.36 p.m. Battalion in bivouacks.</p> <p>Captains F. W. Utton, J. C. K. Carson and J. F. Sumption promoted Majors. Lieutenants J. K. Nesbitt, W. E. Beaton, and G. L. Stairs promoted Captains.</p>		II/1.
MARCH TO ALBERT.	Sept 2nd.		<p>Morning very cloudy changing to a fine afternoon with sunshine. Rifle, Ammunition and Smoke Helmet Inspection in the morning. No parades for the remainder of the day.</p> <p>The Battalion "Fall In" at 7 p.m. and Companies marched independently to ALBERT, where they were billeted. Battalion Headquarters on the RUE HURTU. The town was deserted, as regards its civil population, with the exception of a few who had ventured back to cater to the troops who changed to be billeted there. The Church, a pleasing structure of pressed red brick and fine building stone, very badly battered by the enemy heavy guns. Surmounting the lofty spire is the figure of the Virgin with the Child in Her arms. This had at some time, received a direct hit at its Base and is now leaning over at an angle of about 120 degrees, as if to take a headlong dive to earth.</p>		
ALBERT & TARA HILL. DIVISIONAL RESERVE BIVOUACKS & TRENCHES.	Sept. 3rd.		<p>Very fine day, though showery during the late afternoon. Party of 12 Officers and 20 N.C.O.'s. sent to reconnoitre TARA HILL and LA BOISELLE, at 10 a.m. Roman Catholic and Protestant Church Parades at 11 a.m. Rifle Inspection for Details by the Armourers <del>at</del> during the forenoon. Heavy bombardment heard since the early morning, and the Battalion was warned to be ready to move off on two hours' notice at 9.30 a.m. At 12.45 p.m. the Battalion was ordered to take up position in reserve lines at 1.30 p.m.</p>		

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

September 1916.

Page 2.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date 1916.	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
TARA HILL DIVISIONAL RESERVE.	Sept. 4th.		Very wet morning, finer afternoon. Battalion in trenches and bivouacs on TARA HILL. A few shrapnel over ALBERT at 6 p.m. Orderly Room at RUE HURTU, ALBERT.	R.P.L.
CHALK PITS. BRIGADE RESERVE.	Sept. 5th.		Very fine day. Battalion moved from reserve position on TARA HILL to position at CHALK PITS.	R.P.L.
SOMME SALIENT TRENCHES.	Sept. 6th.		Very wet day. Vide History attached.	R.P.L.
" " "	Sept. 7th.		Finer weather, though still inclined to be showery. Vide attached History.	R.P.L. IV/1.
" " "	Sept. 8th.		Fine day. Vide attached History.	R.P.L. IV/1.
TARA HILL TRENCHES & BIVOUACS. MARCH TOWARLOY	Sept. 9th.		Fine day. "Fall In" 8.50 a.m., "March Off" at 9.00 a.m. Battalion marched from bivouacs on TARA HILL to WARLOY. The Battalion was billeted in the village.	R.P.L. II/2
MARCH TO HERRISSART	Sept. 10th.		Fine day. "Fall In" 7 a.m., "March off" 7.10 am. Battalion marched from WARLOY to Billets in HERRISSART.	R.P.L. II/3
MARCH FROM HERRISSART TO MONTRELET.	Sept. 11th.		Fine day, cloudy in the afternoon. Battalion marched from HERRISSART to billets in MONTRELET. "FALL IN" 1 p.m., "March Off" at 1.10 p.m., and arrived at destination at 5.15 p.m.	R.P.L. II/4
RESERVE ARMY REST AREA MONTRELET.	Sept. 12th.		Fine day. Morning devoted to the cleaning up of personal equipment. Muster Parade and Kit Inspection in the afternoon.	R.P.L.

14th Canadian Battalion

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

September 1916.

Page 3.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date 1916.	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
RESERVE ARMY REST AREA MONTRELET.	Sept. 13th.		Miserable day, cold and drizzly rains Battalion "Fell In" at 7.50 a.m. and marched to the Training Area at 8.00 a.m. 8.30 a.m. to 10.30 a.m., Squad, Platoon, Company and Arm Drill and Bayonet Fighting. 98 other ranks Training in the Lewis machine gun from 9 a.m. to 12 noon. and Range Practice from 1.30 p.m. to 3.30 p.m.	R/R/L
- do -	Sept 14th.		Fair day. Battalion "Fell In" at 7.50 a.m. and marched to the Training Area at 8.00 a.m. Squad, Platoon and Company Drill. Musketry Exercises, Bayonet Fighting and extended order movements.	R/R/L
MARCH TO LA VICOIGNE.	Sept. 15th.		Fine day. Battalion marched from billets in MONTRELET to billets in LA VICOIGNE at 7 a.m. arriving at destination at 9.15 a.m. Remainder of day spent in rest.	R/R/L
MARCH TO VADENCOURT.	Sept. 16th.		Fine day. Battalion resumed the march at 8 a.m. and marched to VADENCOURT. Battalion billeted in Camp in woods N. of the village. Arrived 12 noon. Remainder of day spent in rest.	R/R/L II/5.
VADENCOURT.	Sept 17th.		Fine day. Battalion in Camp at VADENCOURT. Protestant Church Parade in the afternoon conducted by Captain Moffatt. Kit Inspection.	R/R/L
RESERVE. BRICKFIELDS.	Sept 18th.		Very wet day. Battalion moved from Camp at VADENCOURT to the BRICKFIELDS, N.W. of ALBERT at 2.00 p.m., arrived at 5.30 p.m. The Battalion constructed shelters from empty shell boxes and rubber sheets. Orderly Room established at 19 RUE DE DOULLENS, ALBERT.	R/R/L II/6
- - -	Sept 19th.		Showery throughout the day. Day spent in in drying out and personal "cleaning up".	R/R/L

4  
14th Canadian Battalion

WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

September 1916.

Page 4.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date 1916.	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	5	Remarks and references to Appendices
RESERVE BRICKFIELDS..	Sept. 20th		Fair day, rain and sunshine alternately. Battalion in bivouacks at BRICKFIELDS. Ammunition Dumps at on BOUZINCOURT - ALBERT Road shelled. Battalion practised Battalion in Attack.		RRL
- do -	Sept. 21st		Fine day. Company, Platoon and Squad Drill in morning. Working Party of 4 Officers and 225 other ranks furnished for work on OVILLIERS - COURCELLETTE Road. Casualties - 3 other ranks wounded.		RRL
- do -	Sept 22nd		Very fine day. Bayonet Fighting, extended order movements and Company Drill in the morning. Working Party of 2 Officers and 200 other ranks furnished for work on OVILLIERS - COURCELLETTE ROAD. --No casualties.		RRL
- do -	Sept 23rd		Very fine day. Battalion practised 'Battalion in Attack' in the morning. Battalion moved from Bivouacks on BRICKFIELDS to X.5. <del>central</del> <del>XXXXXX</del> Brigade Support Position.		RRL II/7.
BRIGADE SUPPORT.	Sept 24th		Very fine day. <del>Vide attached History.</del> Battalion in Brigade Reserve. ?		RRL II/8
TRENCHES	Sept 25th		Very fine day. Vide attached History.		RRL IV/2
- do -	Sept 26th		Very fine day. Vide attached History.		RRL IV/2
- do	Sept 27th		Very fine day. Vide attached History.		RRL IV/2
ALBERT to WARLOY.	Sept 28th		Fine day, cloudy at intervals. Battalion billeted in ALBERT on arrival from trenches. Headquarters on the RUE DE BRAY. Battalion "Fell In" at 4 p.m. and marched to WARLOY. Battalion billeted in village on arrival 7.15 p.m.		RRL II/9

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Page 5.

or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

September, 1916.

Place	Date 1916.	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
RESERVE AREA WARLOY	Sept. 29th		<p>Very wet day. Battalion resting in morning. Kit Inspection in the afternoon.</p>	R.P.B.
do	Sept 30th		<p>Very fine day. Battalion inspected and addressed by Major-General A. W. Currie, C.B., G.O.C., 1st Canadian Division at 10 a.m. Working Party of 1 Officer and 50 other ranks furnished for work at the Casualty Clearing Station at CONTAY.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>R.P. Clark</i> Lieutenant-Colonel, Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>Index to Appendices.</u></p> <p>Operation Orders. II/1, II/2, II/3, II/4, II/5, II/6, II/7, II/8. II/9</p> <p>Histories VI/1, IV/2.</p>	R.P.B.

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR

DIARY

SEPTEMBER 1916.

APPENDICES 11/1 to 11/9, and IV/1 & IV/2.





by  
Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion.  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

Reference Lens Sheet 57.D.S.E.

Field Sept. 1st 1916.

- MOVEMENT** 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will march from VADENCOURT to BRICKFIELDS, W. 22.d. 4.8 $\frac{1}{2}$ . via WARLOY-SENILIS-BOUZINCOURT on September 1st 1916.
- PARADES** 2. The Battalion will parade in full marching order in the usual order of march on the Plateau S. of Camp ready to move off at 1.15 p.m.
- TRANSPORTS** 3. Transports of Battalion units will march Brigaded, except travelling kitchens, water carts and Headquarters' carts which will accompany Battalions.
- OFFICERS' BAGGAGE** 4. Officers' Baggage, Mess utensils etc. must be ready for collection at 1.00 p.m.
- BILLETING OFFICER** 5. Lieut W.SHARP will report to Staff Captain at 10.00 a.m. Sept 1st at Brigade Headquarters, VADENCOURT.
- BILLETING PARTY** 6. Lieut W.J.Holliday, 1 N.C.O. from each platoon, and 1 NCO from each other unit will fall in at Orderly Room at 12 NOON and meet Lieut W.Sharp at Road Junction immediately N.W.of Brickfields.
- SYNCHRONIZATION OF WATCHES.** 7. At Battalion Headquarters at 12 NOON
- MEALS.** 8. All units will be served by Travelling Kitchens as per schedule issued by Quartermaster who will arrange for a hot meal to be ready immediately upon arrival at destination
9. ACKNOWLEDGE.

Lieut and Adjt.,  
14th Canadian Battalion.

Issued by Orderly at.....

Copy No	1	to	No 1	Coy.
"	2	"	2	"
"	3	"	3	"
"	4	"	4	"
"	5		R.S.M.	
"	6		Machine Gun Officer	
"	7		Intelligence Officer	
"	8		Bombing Officer	
"	9		Quartermaster and Transport Officer	
"	10		Adjutant	
"	11		Orderly Room	
"	12		3rd Can. Inf. Bde.	
"	13		War Diary	
"	14		"	



by  
Lieutenant Colonel R. P. Clark  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

-----cc00cc-----

In the Field,  
September 7th, 1916.

## Reference Sheet,

## ALBERT, combined Sheet.

- Movement 1. The 3rd CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE will march from their present Billets to WARLOY on September 9th, via the track South of SENLIS.
- Starting Point 2. The Head of the 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will pass the Starting Point (Cutting in Road W.26.b.5.0.) at 10.31 a.m.
- Parade. 3. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will "Fall In" at 9.50 a.m. sharp in front of Battalion Headquarters, ready to move off at 9 a.m.
- Guides. 4. Two Scouts will guide Battalion through ALBERT to STARTING POINT.
- Transport. 5. Transport of Battalions, except cookers, water-carts and Officers' Mess Carts, will be brigaded, and will march under the Orders of the Brigade Transport Officer, Lieutenant MORTON, 15th Canadian Battalion.
- Officers' Baggage. 6. All Officers and Headquarters Baggage to be in front of Battalion Headquarters, ready for removal, by 8 a.m. SHARP.
- Billeting Party. 7. A billeting Party, in charge of Lieutenant W.J. HOLLIDAY, of one N.C.O. per Platoon and one N.C.O. for each Detail, will parade at Battalion Headquarters at 7 a.m. SHARP, and will meet Lieut. SHARP at the HENENCOURT Road enters WARLOY.
- Stragglers. 8. As Stragglers will reflect discredit on the Discipline of the Battalion, the attention of Company and Unit Commanders is again drawn to the fact that men MUST obtain a slip from an Officer of their Unit before Falling Out.  
Company and Unit Commanders will report on Stragglers upon arrival in new Area.
- Rear Party. 9. A detailed Rear Party in charge of the Pioneer Sergeant to clean up around bivouacing Area upon evacuation of same by Battalion. Company and Unit Commanders will, however, be held responsible for the cleanliness of their own Areas.
- Reports. 10. Company and Unit Commanders will report on arrival at their Billets, and submit "Marching In State".
11. ACKNOWLEDGE.

*[Signature]*  
Lieutenant and Adjutant,  
14th Canadian Battalion.

Issued at.....by Orderly.

Copy No. 1 to No. 1 Company

" " 2 " " 2 "

" " 3 " " 3 "

" " 4 " " 4 "

Copy No. 5 to R.S.M. and Details.

" " 6 " Transport Officer &  
Quartermaster.

" " 7 " Orderly Room.

" " 8 " War Diary.



by  
Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment,  
-----

Field September 9th 1916.

- MOVEMENT.** 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will march from their present billets to HERISSART via VADENCOURT and CONTAY on September 10th 1916.
- STARTING POINT.** 2. The head of the 14th Battalion will pass the starting point, the Western exit from WARLOY at 7.17 a.m.
- PARADE** 3. The Battalion will fall in on the road in front of Battalion Headquarters in the usual order of march at 6.50 a.m. and march off at 7.00 a.m.
- TRANSPORTS** 4. Transports of Battalions will be Brigaded, except cookers, water carts and Officers' Mess Carts, and will march under the orders of Brigade Transport Officer.
- BILLETING OFFICER** 5. Lieut W. Sharp, Billeting Officer, will meet Staff Captain at the Town Major's Office, HERISSART, at 6.30 a.m. to-morrow.
- BILLETING PARTY** 6. Lieut W.J. Holliday, and one N.C.O. from each platoon and one from each detail in the Battalion will leave Battalion Headquarters at 5.00 a.m. to-morrow, and meet Lieut W. Sharp at the Town Major's Office, HERISSART.
7. ACKNOWLEDGE.

Lieutenant,  
Adjutant 14th Canadian Battalion,

Issued at..... by Orderly.

Copy No 1 to No 1 Company.

" 2	" 2	"
" 3	" 3	"
" 4	" 4	"
" 5	"	Regimental Sergeant Major.
" 6	"	Intelligence Officer.
" 7	"	Machine Gun Officer.
" 8	"	Bombing Officer
" 9	"	Quartermaster and Transport Officer.
" 10	"	Adjutant
" 11	"	Orderly Room
" 12	"	3rd Can. Inf. Bde.
" 13	"	War Diary
" 14	"	"



by  
 Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

App.  
 II/4

Field Sept. 10th 1916

10

- MOVEMENT 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will march to MONTRELET on September 11th 1916. via le Val de Maisen, Rue du ROSEL VALHEUREUX-BONNEVILLE, etc.
- STARTING POINT 2. The head of the Battalion will pass starting point, the S.W. exit of HERISSART at 1.25 p.m.
- PARADE. 3. The Battalion will parade in the usual order of march at 1.00 p.m. and march off at 1.10 p.m. the head of the column at Commanding Officer's billet on Church Street, facing N.
- DESTINATION 4. Every man in the Battalion must be aware of the destination of the unit.
- BILLETING OFFICER 5. Lieut W. Sharp will meet Staff Captain at BONNEVILLE church at 6.00 p.m. September 10th.
- BILLETING PARTY 6. Lieut E. McM. Hyman, one N.C.O. from each platoon and each Detail will leave Orderly Room, 28 Church Street at 6 a.m. Sept. 11th. and meet Lieut Sharp at BONNEVILLE church at 12 NOON.
- RECONNAISSANCE. 7. Major J.F. Sumption (mounted) will survey area allotted to the 14th Battalion for training, and ascertain what Bombing Pits, Practice Trenches ranges etc., exist. He will report to the Staff Captain at BONNEVILLE Church at 12 NOON Sept. 11th.
- TRANSPORT 8. Transport will accompany Battalion and will not be Brigaded.
- OFFICERS' BAGGAGE. 9. Officers' Baggage Details cooking effects etc., must be ready for collection by 12 NOON.
- SYNCHRONIZATION of WATCHES. 10. At Orderly Room at 11.00 a.m.

ACKNOWLEDGED

*[Signature]*  
 Lieut and Adj.,  
 14th Canadian Battalion,

Issued at <sup>10</sup> p.m. by Orderly.

Copy No 1 to No 1 Coy.

- |   |    |                                      |
|---|----|--------------------------------------|
| " | 2  | " 2 "                                |
| " | 3  | " 3 "                                |
| " | 4  | " 4 "                                |
| " | 5  | Regimental Sergt. Major.             |
| " | 6  | Intelligence Officer                 |
| " | 7  | Bombing Officer                      |
| " | 8  | Machine Gun Officer                  |
| " | 9  | Quartermaster and Transport Officer. |
| " | 10 | Adjutant.                            |
| " | 11 | Orderly Room                         |
| " | 12 | 3rd Can. Inf. Bde.                   |
| " | 13 | War Diary                            |
| " | 14 | "                                    |





by  
Major Gault McCombe,  
Acting Officer Commanding 14th Can. Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

----- OCGM-----

Apr  
II/5

11

Field Sept 15th 1916.

- MOVEMENT.** 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will march from LAVICOGNE area to VADENCOURT area via TALMAS, VAL de MAISON, HERRIBART and CONTAY Sept 16<sup>th</sup>.
- PARADE.** 2. Battalion will parade on main street ready to move off at 8. 10 a.m. in order of march, No 2, No 1, No 3 and No 4 Companies. Details in usual positions.
- STARTING POINT** 3. Road junction immediately S. of LAVICOGNE, which point must be passed at 8.20 a.m.
- TRANSPORT.** 4. Will march in rear of Battalion.
- DISTANCE.** 5. 500 yards interval to be maintained between each unit of Brigade.
- BILLETING OFFICER** 6. Lieut. W. SHARP will meet the Staff Captain outside Can. Corps Headquarters at CONTAY at 9.30 a.m.
- BILLETING PARTY** 7. Lieut E. McM. Hyman, one N.C.O. from each platoon and Detail, including Q.M. Stores and Transport will leave Orderly Room at 6. 00 a.m.
- BILLETS.** 8 Must be left scrupulously clean.
- INFORMATION** 9. All ranks must be aware of destination before marching out.
- RECONNAISSANCE** 10. Intelligence Officer supplies two scouts to lead Battalion by route indicated.
- BAGGAGE** 11. Will be collected at 7.00 a.m.
- SYNCHRONIZATION of WATCHES** 12. At Orderly Room at 7.00 a.m.
13. ACKNOWLEDGE.

Issued at 11.15 by Orderly.

*Richard Gault*  
Lieut and Adjt.,  
14th Canadian Battalion.



by  
Major Gault McCombe,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

---eCo---

-----Field Sept. 18th 1916.

12

- MOVEMENT. 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will move to the BRICKFIELDS area on September 18th via WARLOY-HENENCOURT-MILLENCOURT.
- PARADE. 2. The Battalion will parade in full marching order on the parade ground immediately south of woods at.....
- TRANSPORT. 3. Will march in rear of the Battalion.
- BILLETING OFFICER 4. Lieut. W. Sharp (Mounted) and one Transport representative (Mounted) will meet Staff Captain at Brigade Headquarters, WARLOY, at 1.15 p.m. sharp.
- LUGGAGE. 5. Will be ready for collection at 12 noon.
- SYNCHRONIZATION of WATCHES. 6. At Orderly Room at 12 NOON.
- GUIDES. 7. Intelligence Officer supplies two scouts to lead Battalion by route indicated.
8. ACKNOWLEDGED

Lieutenant,  
Adjutant, 14th Canadian Battalion.

Issued at.....by Orderly.

Copy No. 1 to No. 1 Coy.

"	"	2	"	"	2	"
"	"	3	"	"	3	"
"	"	4	"	"	4	"
"	"	5	"	R.S.M.		
"	"	6	"	Intelligence Officer.		
"	"	7	"	Bombing Officer.		
"	"	8	"	Machine Gun Officer.		
"	"	9	"	Adjutant.		
"	"	10	"	Orderly Room.		
"	"	11	"	3rd Can. Inf. Bde.		
"	"	12	"	Quartermaster and Transport Officer.		
"	"	13	"	War Diary.		
"	"	14	"	War Diary.		



by  
Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

App  
II/7

Reference Maps-Le Sars Sheet 1/10,000 Field Sept 23rd 1916. 13  
Ovillers Sheet 1/10,000

- Relief. 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will relieve the 4th CANADIAN BATTALION in Brigade Support X.5.d.2.8. on Sept. 23rd.
- Parade. 2. The Battalion will parade at 2.00 p.m.
- Equipment 3. Light marching order will be worn. Overcoats and oil-sheets in bandolier fashion, 6 sandbags and 4 bombs each. Packs will be left at the Transport.
- Guides. 4. Guides will meet their units at X.16.a.6.3 at 5 p.m.
- Headquarters. 5. Battalion Headquarters will be located X.5.d.2.8.
- Synchronization of watches. 6. At Orderly Room at 12.30 p.m.
- Officers' Luggage... 7. To be left at Transport and to be ready for collection at 1.30 p.m.

Lieut and Adjt.,  
14th Canadian Battalion,

Issued at.... by Orderly.

Copy No	1	to	No 1 Coy.
"	2	"	2 "
"	3	"	3 "
"	4	"	4 "
"	5		Regimental Sergeant Major.
"	6		Intelligence Officer
"	7		Bombing Officer
"	8		Machine Gun Officer
"	9		Quartermaster and Transport Officer
"	10		Orderly Room
"	11		Adjutant.
"	12		3rd Can Inf Bde.
"	13		War Diary
"	14		War Diary.



App II/8

OPERATION ORDER No. 87A.

SECRET.

14

by  
Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

-----ooOoo-----

In the Field,  
September 24th, 1918.

1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will move into close support on the night of the 24th September.
2. No. 2 COMPANY will occupy position in SUGAR TRENCH, connecting with No. 1 Company, which unit is already in position there. Nos. 3 and 4 Companies, will occupy positions in SUNKEN ROAD. Details in SUNKEN ROAD.
3. BATTALION HEADQUARTERS will be at R.29.d.1.8.
4. One guide from each Company and Detail will meet the 15th CANADIAN BATTALION at X.16.a.6.3. at 8 p.m. and guide their relieving unit into position.
5. Troops in support will show themselves as little as possible during daylight.
6. Disposition Reports must reach Battalion Headquarters as soon as new position is occupied.
7. Completion of relief will be signified by code - "FINE NIGHT".
8. Brigade Headquarters will be marked by a FLAG by day and RED LAMP by night. All runners must make themselves acquainted with same before tonight, Location X.11.a.1.4. The position of the Advanced Report Centre (O.P.) at R.35.d.7.5 $\frac{1}{2}$  and the RELAY STATION S.E. of the-SUGAR FACTORY must also be known. It is possible that these Report Centres may have to be changed.
9. Units will not move ~~xxxxxxxx~~ from their present positions without first informing Headquarters that the 15th BATTALION has completed their relief. Guides from 10th BATTALION will conduct units to their new positions.

Further details will follow.

10. Acknowledge.

(Signed) Arthur Flow,  
Lieutenant,  
Adjutant, 14th Can. Batt.





Operation Order No. 87.

Secret.

by  
Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

15

-----ooOoo-----

In the Field,  
September 28th, 1916.

- MOVEMENT 1. The 14th Canadian Battalion will march from their present Billets to WARLOY on Spt. 28th., via track SOUTH of SENLIS. In case of bad weather the main BOUZINCOURT - SENLIS ROAD will be used.
- Starting Point. 2. The 14th Canadian Battalion will pass the starting point (W.28.b.2.1;) at 4.43 p.m.
- Parade. 4. The Battalion will "Fall In" at 3.20 p.m. sharp in front of their present billets, ready to move off at 3.30 p.m.
- Guides. 4. Two Scouts will guide the Battalion through ALBERT to starting point.
- Transport. 5. Will march in rear of Battalion.
- Officers' Baggage. 6. All Officers' and Headquarters baggage will be in front of billets ready for removal by 2.30 p.m.
- Billeting Party 7. Lieutenant J. E. McKenna will meet staff Captain at the TOWN MAJOR's Office WARLOY at 3.00 p.m. today.  
Billeting party of one N.C.O. per platoon and one N.C.O. for each detail will be in charge of Sergeant McCormack and will meet Lieutenant McKenna at the TOWN MAJORS OFFICE WARLOY at 4 p.m.  
Party will "Fall In" at 1.20 p.m. ready to move off at 1.30 p.m.
- Rear Party. 8. A detailed rear party in charge of Pioneer Sergeant to clean up round billets upon evacuation of same by Battalion Company and Unit Commanders will, however, be held responsible for the cleanliness of their own billets.
- Reports. 9. Company and Unit Commanders will report on arrival at their Billets and submit "Marching In State".
10. ACKNOWLEDGEm

(Signed) Arthur Flow.

Lieutenant,  
Adjutant, 14th Can Batt.



SOMME SALIENT.

16

Reference Map, Trench Map 57d.S.E.  
and  
Trench Map, MOUQUET FARM.

1. On the 6th instant, 14th Canadian Battalion ordered to carry out reliefs as follows:-
  - (a) No. 4 Company in trenches and shell holes on South and East of MOUQUET FARM, relieving a Company of the 13th Battalion.
  - (b) No. 3 Company to relieve one Company, 16th Battalion, in location described as P.66-95 to ROAD, being the most advanced position in the SOMME SALIENT.
  - (c) No. 1 Company in "TOM'S CUT".
  - (d) No. 2 Company in CHALK PITS.
  
2. No. 4 Company, under Captain W. E. Beaton, completed relief in its sector by 2.30 a.m., suffering several casualties. All available men were put to work in trenches and succeeded, in spite of constant shell fire, in improving these positions.

This Company was relieved by a Company of the 8th Battalion at 12 midnight 7/8th instant, and marched to bivouac at TARA HILL.
  
3. Two platoons No. 3 Company and one section of Bombers, under Captain Gavin Stairs, met with serious checks in attempting to occupy their positions. Heavy shell fire swept the area they had to pass through and caused many casualties. Captain Stairs, a very valuable Officer, was instantly killed, Lieutenant G. T. Bartlett wounded, and a party of Bombers under Sergeant J. W. Heare, a particularly efficient and brave N.C.O., buried. Every possible effort was made to recover these men and all but five were eventually rescued, Sergeant Heare, unfortunately, being amongst the lost. The guides detailed by the 16th Battalion were also wounded. Relief was finally completed partly in daylight at 10 a.m., but party was reduced to one N.C.O. and thirty men. They were reinforced by Captain R. C. MacKenzie and Lieutenant C. H. Sclater, and, later again, by a platoon of No. 1 Company, who, at great risk, managed to crawl out over the open ground in daylight. Captain MacKenzie commanded this party until relieved on the morning of the 8th instant about 6 a.m., by a Company of the 7th Battalion. Just after relief was completed, about two hundred of the enemy attacked this position, but were driven back with heavy casualties. Captain MacKenzie and Lieutenant Sclater were both wounded, and many of No. 2 Section of Bombers killed or wounded and captured. On relief the survivors proceeded to TARA HILL.
  
4. At 10 a.m. the 7th instant, the situation on the remainder of the front held by the 16th Battalion was so serious that attached message, M.37, was forwarded to Brigade Headquarters.

At 10.30 a.m. a verbal order to completely relieve the 16th Battalion in front line was received.

Lieutenant G. B. Murray and Lieutenant B. L. Cook, and 67 other ranks from No. 1 Company were detailed to carry out this duty and at 2.30 p.m., with only seven casualties, this was completed. By the time the relief by the 7th Battalion was finished, some sixteen hours later, this number had been increased to approximately fifty.

The 14th Battalion held, from that time until finally relieved at 5.30 a.m., position from MOUQUET FARM on left to R.28.d.C.2 $\frac{1}{2}$ .-on right.

Lieutenant Murray (Lieutenant Cook was wounded) did splendid service in repelling the enemy attack at 6.10 a.m. and inorganising counter-attacks. With greatly reduced numbers he finally withdrew about 12 noon to the Battalion position at TARA HILL.

5. The balance of No. 1 Company and No. 2 Company less, fifty other ranks, Stretcher Bearer Party, on relief marched to TARA HILL

6. Casualties:-

OFFICERS.

- Major O'German J., (R. C. Chaplain) wounded 6/9/16.
- Captain-R. C. MacKenzie, wounded 7/9/16.
- Captain G. L. Stairs, Killed, 7/9/16.
- Lieutenant G. T. Bartlett Wounded 7/9/16.
- Lieutenant B. L. Cook, Wounded 7/9/16.
- Lieutenant C. H. Sclater, Wounded 7/9/16.

OTHER RANKS.

Killed.....44  
 Wounded.....116  
 Missing.....33

193 TOTAL, other ranks.



OPERATIONS,

APP IV/2.

SOMME SALIENT, September 26/27/28, 1916.

14th Canadian Battalion, Royal Montreal Regiment.

Reference SKETCH Map attached.

With reference to the operations carried out by this Battalion on September 26/27/28th, 1916, I have the honour to report as follows:-

1. Disposition. (Vide Operation Order No. 88 and Special  
in Operation Order.)  
Trench.

The disposition for the attack was made with three Companies in the assault, and one company in reserve, each Company attacking on a one platoon frontage.

No. 2 Company under Captain E. B. Nelles (Officer Commanding), Lieutenant G. M. Sylvester, and Lieutenant S. S. Jones, on the LEFT:

No. 3 Company under Lieutenant C. G. Power, (Officer Commanding), Lieutenant W. Sharp, and Lieutenant W. J. Holliday, in the CENTRE:

No. 4 Company under Captain E. E. Boston, (Officer Commanding), Lieutenant R. A. Pelletier, Lieutenant E. M. Hyman and Lieutenant O. J. Larzen, on the RIGHT:

No. 1 Company in RESERVE under Major J. C. K. Carson, Lieutenant H. E. Banks and Lieutenant E. H. Raymond:

2. At 12.34 p.m. the machine guns opened fire, and this, in my opinion, nullified any surprise effect, as the enemy had already opened fire heavily about the time the second wave left our jumping off trench.
3. At 12.35 p.m. the first wave left the trench, followed at intervals of between 70 and 100 yards, by second wave, mopping up party, third and fourth waves.
4. At 12.40 p.m. a party of 45 prisoners passed to our jumping off trench and were sent back.
5. At 1.03 p.m. from actual observation, our first objective had been taken.
6. At 1.05 p.m. a working party under Company Sergeant Major G. A. McLeellan were sent out to establish a strong point at R.23.1.2.9.
7. At 1.10 p.m. from actual observation, our Battalion had advanced over the ridge.
8. At 1.12 p.m. No. 1 Company, in reserve, were ordered forward to the 1st Objective to assist in consolidating same.
9. At 1.48 p.m. returning wounded stated that the 1st Objective had been taken and counter attack wiped out by our Lewis Guns.
10. At 2.40 p.m. our final objective was reported taken by Lieutenant W. J. Holliday, O. C. No. 3 Company, confirmed by Lieutenant R. A. Pelletier returning wounded.

11. Immediately on reaching their objective, all ranks commenced to consolidate their positions and complete strong point near R. 23. central.
12. During the afternoon, three attacks were repulsed and some prisoners taken. At intervals during the afternoon of the 26th and all night 26/27th, a heavy barrage was put on KENORA TRENCH, our final objective, and this was supplemented at intervals by bombing attacks; on both flanks, the enemy advancing along KENORA TRENCH.
13. The Unit on the right, the 31st Battalion, having failed to attain their objective, left that flank open to the enemy, who enfiladed us with a machine gun from the junction of KENORA and SUDBURY TRENCHES, at about R. 24. a. 1. 1, causing many casualties. The 15th Battalion on the left, having received no orders yet, to advance to their final objective, and so connect with our left flank. This left both our flanks occupied by the enemy.
14. At about 3 a.m. on the morning of the 27th, the garrison of the KENORA TRENCH, having been reduced by about two-thirds, and having received information that the positions in rear had been prepared, Lieutenant W. J. Holliday, in charge of the party (all of the other Officers taking part in the attack having become casualties) decided to retire into the reserve trench. (See Map attached). This was accomplished without any loss and our wounded were carried out.
15. Second Attack on KENORA TRENCH.  
Lieutenant W. J. Holliday reported back to Battalion Headquarters, where he was informed that two platoons of the 16th Battalion had gone forward to reinforce him, and he was given orders to immediately reoccupy KENORA TRENCH. He collected 17 men, who amongst them carried 7 tins of water, and retook the trench. The Germans who were holding it put up practically no resistance, and some half-dozen prisoners were also taken. After occupying the trench Lieutenant Holliday sent back word to Lieutenant Tupper, of the 16th Battalion, to advance, and assist in holding same. This was done and consolidated as far as practicable.
16. During the day, the Huns put a barrage along the whole length of this trench and caused many casualties. At about 6 p.m. the Huns again attacked on the left with bombs, along the trench, and also massed about 200 men on the right, presumably with the intention of cutting our men off. Several machine guns enfiladed our position, and Lieutenant Holliday, 14th Battalion, and Lieutenant Tupper, 16th Battalion, had a conference and decided that it would be wise to vacate this isolated position, and they accordingly retired again to the reserve trench.
17. Third Attack on KENORA TRENCH: (Vide Operation order No. 89).  
Upon this retirement being reported to Brigade Headquarters, orders were received that, in co-operation with the 15th Battalion on our immediate left flank, and the 2nd Canadian Infantry Brigade on the left flank of the 15th Battalion, that KENORA TRENCH was to be again occupied by us and the 2nd Brigade and 15th Battalion would assault the positions on their fronts.

18. The 31st Battalion on our right were reported to have taken their objective, which would have protected our right flank, and would have left the machine gun position at about R.24.a.1.1 which, by enfilading us, was causing casualties; in their possession. This information was not correct.
19. At 2 a.m., the zero hour which was eventually fixed, Lieut. Holliday, with Lieutenant Fitzpatrick (of Machine Gun Battery) and Lieutenant McLean (of Intelligence Section), the only Officers available, again advanced to the attack with all the men that could be collected or spared from other positions, viz., about 75 other ranks.
20. Many flares were being fired from KENORA TRENCH, and a heavy barrage of Whizz-bangs, small calibre shells and machine gun fire, was placed by the enemy in front of objective. With the small forces at his disposal, and the lack of any co-operating attacks on either flank, Lieutenant Holliday decided to relinquish the attempt at 2.30 a.m., having then suffered many casualties.
21. At 7 a.m. the relieving unit, the 25th Battalion, who had been held in the meantime in the jumping off trench, completed our relief as shown on the map attached.
22. The following general notes are respectfully submitted:-
- (a) Machine Gun barrage opened too soon. I think this should be carefully looked into in any future attacks. Possibly the time of flight of the heavy artillery's projectiles was not calculated on by the Officer in charge of the Machine Guns. The enemy's barrage opened and shells actually lit just in front of, and in, our jumping off trench, before our 2nd wave left. This I think was due to the fact that any surprise was spoiled by the machine gun barrage opening too soon.
  - (b) The ground we attacked over was manned much more heavily on our front, R.23.b. and R.23.d. than we had expected, from all reconnaissances and reports. The number of the enemy dead and wounded lying on the field and the large numbers of prisoners taken by this Battalion corroborate this. The artillery fire had evidently been very effective in causing casualties.
  - (c) The force of our advance took all before it and not much fight was shown by the enemy. They fired at us, and on the closer advance of our men, they threw down their rifles, and put up their hands.
  - (d) In some cases troops got ahead of our barrage. This I consider requires very careful training before going into an attack as, when the fighting spirit is aroused, it is very difficult to hold the men back. In our case, this was accentuated by the fact that 7 out of the 9 Officers who went forward with our first attack, became casualties early in the charge.
  - (e) While fully realising the danger of overcrowding trenches, subject to shell fire, I am strongly in favour of troops who have taken part in an assault being relieved as soon afterwards as possible. In any case they should be reinforced as the moral support of fresh troops will do much to counteract the effect of the natural reaction after the excitement of the assault.



23. I deeply regret to report the death in action of Lieutenant Eugene McMahon Hyman, also that Lieutenant Rene Archer Pelletier and Lieutenant Wylie Sharp died of wounds, and that Lieutenant George Macdonald Sylvester is missing.

The following Officers were wounded in the operations:-  
 Major John Francis Sumption;  
 Captain William Evans Beaton;  
 Lieutenant Henry Ewart Banks;  
 Lieutenant Ernest Hatheway Raymond;  
 Lieutenant Eric Betcher Nelles;  
 Lieutenant Charles Gavan Power;  
 Lieutenant Christopher Healy Sullivan;  
 Lieutenant George Belcher Murray;  
 Lieutenant Oswald Joseph Larzen (shell shock);  
 Lieutenant William Jeffrey Holliday (remained at duty)

360 Non-commissioned Officers and men became casualties during the operations.

May I please bring to your notice the exceptionally good work of Lieutenant William Jeffrey <sup>Holliday</sup> Major John Clontarf Kelvyn Carson, Lieutenant Arthur Plow, and Lieutenant Eric Betcher Nelles, further particulars of which will be forwarded to you on Army Form W.3121.

I have also much pleasure in bringing to your notice the excellent work of Captain H. M. Urquhart of your Staff. He appears to have fully anticipated the loss from shell fire of supplies and of the personnel looking after same, and to have made full arrangements for sending these up to us. He personally supervised, under very heavy shell fire, the arrangements, which, from our point of view, were certainly excellent, and untiringly assisted us in every conceivable manner.

*R. P. Clark*

Lieutenant-Colonel,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion.

by  
 Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

-----ooOoo-----

In the Field,  
 September 25th, 1916.

Reference Map, Sheet COURCELLETTE, 1/5000.

Information: 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will attack, and take by assault, on September 26th, the following:-

- (a) FIRST OBJECTIVE - that portion of SUDBURY TRENCH being in R. 23. d.  
 (b) SECOND OBJECTIVE - that portion of KENORA TRENCH being in R. 23. b.  
 (c) Any other position held by the enemy being in R. 23. b. and D. and lying south of KENORA TRENCH.

Marks:

2. The following marks will be used to define the direction of objectives and the flanks of the advance:-

- (a) On LEFT, the CROOKED POLE about 700 yards due NORTH from left flank (see para. (3) (a).)  
 (b) On RIGHT flank a bushy-tree, FUZZY-WUZZY, approximately due NORTH from right flank, (see para. 3.(c).)

Assembly:

3. (a) No. 2 Company on left, with left flank at junction of ZOLLERN TRENCH and FABECK TRENCH, and right flank at Junction of C.T. and FABECK TRENCH at R. 29. d. 2. 5.  
 (b) No. 3 Company from right flank of No. 2 COMPANY (see para. 3. (a) above) and extending approximately 150 yards East.  
 (c) No. 4 Company in trench R. 29. b. 5. 7. to R. 30. a. 3. 9.  
 (d) No. 1 COMPANY in SUPPORT, MOUQUET ROAD about R. 29. c.

Connecting Units:

4. On left, 15th BATTALION, on right 6th CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE.

Lewis Gun Posts:

5. Machine Gun Battery will establish Post at approximately R. 17. d. 5. 1. to enfilade REGINA TRENCH and WEST MIRAUMONT ROAD, and to command R. 18. c. 3. 4. This will be known as Lewis Gun Post No. 1.

Method of assault:

6. The assault will be carried out on a three Company front with one Company in support.  
 Nos. 2, 3 and 4 Companies will each have one platoon of 16th Battalion attached to them, for 'Mopping Up' purposes.  
 Each Company will advance to the assault on the frontage of one platoon, in five waves.  
 'MOPPING UP' party will go in with second wave.  
 Great care must be taken to avoid bunching together or leaving gaps in the line.

Prisoners:

7. Prisoners will be sent to road junction R. 29. d. 1. 8. near present 14th BATTALION HEADQUARTERS, handed over to 16th BATTALION escort and receipt obtained.

Action on taking each Objective:

8. (A) At ZERO Hour, which will be communicated separately, the intense shrapnel barrage will begin, and the assaulting troops will advance up to it.  
 (B) On arrival at 1st OBJECTIVE the waves intended to reach the 2nd and final objectives, will cross and reform beyond it, leaving in it only the parties detailed to 'MOP UP' and consolidate it.

8 (cont'd). (c) On arrival at 2nd OBJECTIVE, PATROLS will be pushed forward for reconnaissance.

The barrage will lift beyond the final objectives for 5 minutes, when it will drop back on to the final objective, remaining there.

Patrols will return, their reports will be co-ordinated, and a definite hour fixed for the final assault.

During the pause on the 2nd Objective, the line will be consolidated and arrangements made for the final assault.

(D) As soon as the final objective is reached, PATROLS will be pushed out as far as the barrage permits, LEWIS GUN POST established, (see para. 5) and the new line consolidated.

(E) As each objective is reached, and the trenches behind vacated, the troops in support and reserve will be closed up to the vacated trenches.

Upon arrival at the 1st Objective, it will be consolidated and held, whilst the advance is continued.

Strong Point: 9. Will be established about R.23.d.2.9. by 25 other ranks of No. 1 COMPANY, i/c Company Sergeant-Major McLELLAN.

Position: 10. All Units will be ready in assembly positions for the assault, three hours before ZERO, and before daylight WITHOUT FAIL.

Artillery Arrangements: 11. (a) The bombardment is now in progress and will continue until Zero.

(b) At ZERO, the heavy artillery will barrage in succession, HESSIAN, KENORA, COURCELLETTE, and NORTH and SOUTH PRACTICE TRENCHES, REGINA TRENCH and COMMUNICATION TRENCHES, leading N.E. from its two flanks, lifting on to the SUNKEN ROADS and RAVINES leading S. from the VALLEY of the ANCRE, and on to the GRANDCOURT TRENCH.

They will also attend to counter-battery work.

(c) At ZERO and intense shrapnel-barrage will be put on 100 yards short of the German front line trench on whole-front of attack.

At 0.1 barrage will lift to German front line trench (1st Objective) for 7 minutes.

Barrage will then be lifted back 150 yards beyond the 1st Objective, as the barrage lifts off it.

Between objectives, the rate of advance is calculated at 100 yards to two minutes.

Liaison: 12. Major G. McCombe will act as Liaison Officer at 3rd Brigade Headquarters and Lieut. J.F. FITZPATRICK at Headquarters of Battalion on right flank. Headquarters at X.11.a.1.4.

Brigade:

Advanced Report Centre (B) R.35.d.8.1.  
Relay Station (A) Bugled Cable R.36.a.7.7.  
" " (B) " " R.35.d.8.1.

Contact Patrol:

13. No. 7 Squadron R.F.C. details Patrols to fly at ZERO, plus 1 hour 45 minutes, and again at ZERO, plus two hours, 15 minutes. Flares will be shown at these hours.

Flares will be lighted by the most advanced line of infantry, when the machines sound a KLAXON HORN or fire a VERY LIGHT. Contact Patrol Machines are marked with a BLACK BAND under the right lower plane and a blue streamer on the inside stay of right wing. Flares can be seen best when the machine is approaching and not when directly overhead. If the sun is shining, mirrors will also be used. Flares should be lit in groups of 3 and none should be used behind the advanced troops. A reserve should be kept for use after the line is consolidated.

Flag Marks: 14. Coloured Flags will be used for making the right flank during the advance. These are not to be placed in the ground, but will move forward with the advance. Signallers will report with same to No. 4 Company and carry same during advance.

Synchronisation of Watches: 15. At BATTALION HEADQUARTERS at 6 p.m., 12 midnight, and 4 a.m. preceding ZERO hour.

Equipment: 16. Troops must carry light marching order, 48 hours rations, water bottles filled, 4 grenades, 120 rounds S.A.A., 6 sandbags, shovels and picks, and will advance with fixed bayonets.

Medical: 17. Regimental Aid Post as at present, R.29.d.1.8. Advanced Dressing Station at Cemetery, POZIERES, X.4.a.4.9. Field Ambulance is responsible for evacuation from R.A.P. to A.D.S.M. Walking Cases to QUARRY on POZIERES - ALBERT ROAD, between TRAMWAY X and LA BOISELLE. Any man sent to the rear, sick or wounded, must be tagged by the Medical Officer or carry authority signed by an Officer. Any man not in possession of either of these will be stopped by battle posts. CAPTAIN LUTON, M.O. and 120 other ranks of the 16th BATTALION detailed as Stretcher Bearers, are located at X.5.d. No one is to remain behind with wounded Officers, or other ranks. The Stretcher Bearers only must attend to this duty. It will be considered a grave breach of discipline if this rule is not strictly adhered to.

Note: 18. Should the assault on the final objective be considered impracticable, steps will be taken to drive the enemy from any high ground from which he can observe our approaches.

Barrages: 19. The length of time of barrages will be as follows:

0 to 0.1  
0.1 to 0.14  
0.14 to 0.25  
0.25 to 0.27  
0.27 to 0.29  
0.29 to 0.31  
0.31 to 0.33  
0.33 to 0.39  
0.39 to 0.41  
0.41 to 0.43  
0.43 to 0.45  
0.45 and after - FINAL

Reports: 20. Up to Zero hour, to Battalion Headquarters, R.29.d.1.8., after that hour to Battalion Headquarters front line.

21. Acknowledge.

(Signed) Arthur Flew,  
Lieutenant,  
Adjutant 14th Can. Batt.

SPECIAL OPERATION ORDER.

SECRET.

by  
Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark.  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.  
-----ooOoo-----

25

In the Field,  
September 25th, 1916.

Reference Operation Order No. 88 this date.

1. ZERO will be at 12.35 p.m.
2. This time is only to be communicated to those whom it directly concerns. The telephone will not be used for this purpose.
3. Watches will be carefully synchronised at 6 a.m. and 9 a.m. September 26th.
4. The assaulting Battalion and all troops in the firing line will take the greatest care to conceal their men in trenches and will not move out into their assembly positions until the barrage opens.
5. Bayonets will not be fixed until just before the zero hour.
6. Acknowledge.

(signed) Arthur Flou,

Lieutenant,  
Adjutant, 14th Canadian Battalion

by  
Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.  
-----ooOoo-----

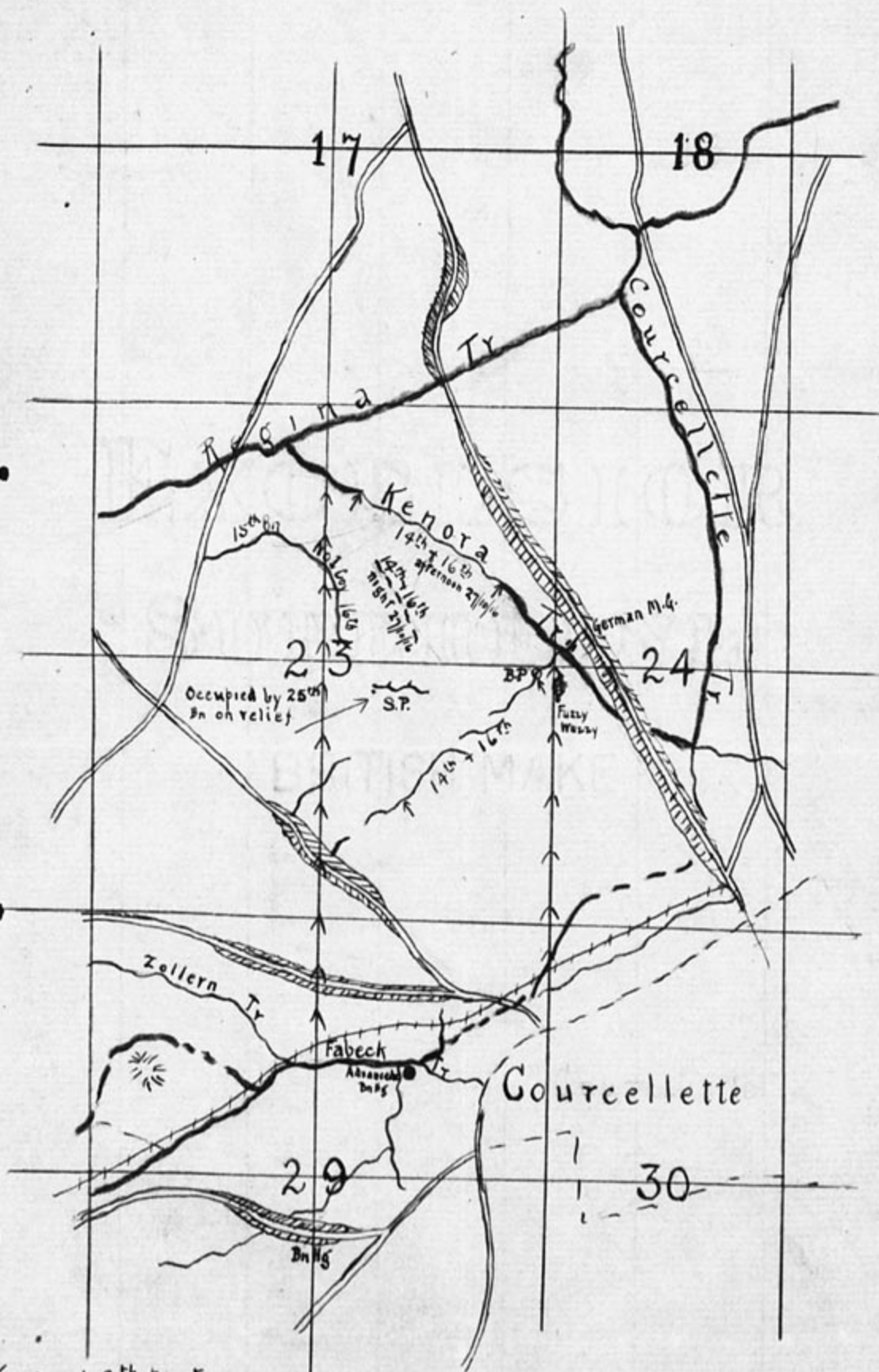
In the Field,  
27th September, 1916.





1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will assault KENORA TRENCH at 2.00 a.m. 28/29th September, 1916.
2. Composite Companies i/c Lieutenant W.J. Holliday (on the right) will make attack with Lieut. TUPPER, 16th BATTALION, (on the left).
3. Artillery preparations intense bursts of fire on Objective every 10 minutes for period of three minutes, commencing 11.27-p.m. 27th September.
4. The barrage will be lifted at 2 a.m. and the Infantry will assault, and will consolidate the position after its capture.
5. At Zero hour, 2.58 a.m. the Assaulting Company will leave Assembly position and advance as far as possible towards objective, taking objective immediately barrage lifts.
6. Patrols will be pushed out in front of KENORA TRENCH, but behind barrage, immediately objective is taken.
7. Reports to Advanced Battalion Headquarters as soon as possible after objective is taken.
8. When objective is taken, the Battalion will be relieved by the 25th Canadian Battalion.

(Signed) Arthur Plow,

Lieutenant,  
Adjutant, for O.C. 14th Can. Batt.

— LE SARS SHEET. —



- Key:
-  14<sup>th</sup> Bn Frontage
  -  Occupied by Germans after attack
  -  Jumping-off trenches
  -  Line of attack

Situation on relief  
by 25<sup>th</sup> Bn morning of  
28<sup>th</sup> Oct 1916.

*S.M.*

A.L. McLean 2/10/16.  
 Lt.  
 14<sup>th</sup> Cn Bn.

LEAVES SHEET

18

Apple

Controlled

30

Stationary

to 22-11 morning of

at 10:00

at 10:00

14" or longer

to 22-11 morning of

at 10:00

at 10:00

at 10:00

Key

to 22-11 morning of

at 10:00

at 10:00

at 10:00



CONFIDENTIAL  
WAR DIARY  
OF  
14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION  
OCTOBER 1916.  
WITH APPENDICES 11/1 to 11/10, and IV/1 to IV/2.  
VOLUME 16 - 10.

WAR DIARY

14th Canadian Bn. 1st Cdn. Division,  
from 1st to 31st October, 1916.

Volume 20.

Diary Text

4 Pages.

- Appendix II/I Special O.O. dated the 7th October Operations detailed in 3rd C.I.B. O.O. 109 dated the 5th Oct. to be carried out on October 8th.
- " II/2 O.O. 91 (A) dated the 10th October, instructions ~~xxx~~ regarding relief of 14th Bn. by 7th Bn. on the night of 10th/11th October in Bde. support.
- " II/3 O.O. 92 dated the 13th October, instructions regarding relief of 5th Bn. by 14th Bn. in Bde. reserve.
- " II/4 O.O. 93 dated the 16th October, instructions re move of 14th Bn. to Warloy on Oct. 16th.
- " II/5 O.O. 96 dated the 19th October, instructions re march of 14th Bn. to RIBEAUCOURT on Oct. 20th.
- " II/6 O.O. 97 dated the 21st October, instructions re move of 14th Bn. on October 22nd.
- " II/7 O.O. 98 dated the 22nd October, instructions re move of 14th Bn. to TERRES on October 23rd.
- " II/8 & 9 Instructions re moves of 14th Bn. on October 23rd and 26th.
- " II/10 O.O. No. 101 dated the 26th October, instructions re relief of 7th North Hants Reg. 73rd Bde. by 14th Bn. on October 27th.
- " IV/1 Honours and awards for the month of October.
- " IV/2 Commissions given from the ranks for October.

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR

DIARY

OCTOBER

1916.

TEXT.

## 14th CANADIAN BATTALION.

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

OCTOBER, 1916.

PAGE 1.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date 1916.	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
SOMME SALIENT. WARLOY.	Oct. 1st.		Very fine day. Roman Catholic and Protestant Church Parades in the morning. Working Party of two Officers and 100 other ranks furnished to act as guards on Lorries of Ammunition Column.	
---do---	Oct. 2nd.		Very wet day. No parades. <u>Working Parties.</u> 8 a.m. 11 other ranks carrying tents. 9 a.m. 30 other ranks to act as Guards on Lorries. 7 p.m. 7 other ranks for Guard on Tents and Bivouacs.	
---do---	Oct. 3rd.		Very wet day. No parades. Working Party at 7 a.m. of 3 Officers and 200 other ranks for work on roads in ALBERT and vicinity.	
---do---	Oct. 4th.		Very wet day. Mustering Parade at 2 p.m.. Working Party of 1 Officer and 50 other ranks reported to Town Major Warloy for striking tents.	
March from WARLOY TO ALBERT.	Oct. 5th.		Fair Day. Working Parties amounting to 3 Officers and 350 other ranks for work on roads. Remainder of Battalion marched to Billets in ALBERT. "Fall In" at 12.30 p.m. Arrived in billets at 5.55 p.m. Battalion Headquarters 32, RUE DES ILLIEUX.	
ALBERT to BRIGADE SUPPORT.	Oct. 6th.		Very fine day. Battalion moved to Brigade Support. Parade at 7.50 a.m. Arrived at 11.15 a.m. Battalion Headquarters at X. 10. b. Orderly Room to Transport Lines on BRICKFIELDS.	
BRIGADE SUPPORT.	Oct. 7th.		Fine day. Battalion in Brigade Support. Casualties 2 other ranks wounded.	
CLOSE SUPPORT.	Oct. 8th.		Fine day. Battalion took over position previously occupied by 2nd Canadian Battalion in SUGAR & CABLE Trenches. Battalion Headquarters in GUN-PIT ROAD. Working Party of 3 Officers and 80 other ranks carrying material to forward area. <u>Casualties</u> :- 2 other ranks Killed 2 other ranks Wounded.	

## 14th CANADIAN BATTALION.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## WAR DIARY

or

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

Army Form C. 2118

OCTOBER, 1916.

PAGE 1.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date 1916.	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	2	Remarks and references to Appendices
SOMME SALIENT. WARLOY.	Oct. 1st.		Very fine day. Roman Catholic and Protestant Church Parades in the morning. Working Party of two Officers and 100 other ranks furnished to act as guards on Lorries of Ammunition Column.		
---do---	Oct. 2nd.		Very wet day. No parades. <u>Working Parties.</u> 8 a.m. 11 other ranks carrying tents. 9 a.m. 30 other ranks to act as Guards on Lorries. 7 p.m. 7 other ranks for Guard on Tents and Bivouacs.		
---do---	Oct. 3rd.		Very wet day. No parades. Working Party at 7 a.m. of 3 Officers and 200 other ranks for work on roads in ALBERT and vicinity.		
---do---	Oct. 4th.		Very wet day. Muster Parade at 2 p.m.. Working Party of 1 Officer and 50 other ranks reported to Town Major Warloy for striking tents.		
March from WARLOY TO ALBERT.	Oct. 5th.		Fair Day. Working Parties amounting to 3 Officers and 350 other ranks for work on roads. Remainder of Battalion marched to Billets in ALBERT. "Fall In" at 12.30 p.m. Arrived in billets at 5.55 p.m. Battalion Headquarters 32, RUE DES ILLIEUX.		
ALBERT to BRIGADE SUPPORT.	Oct. 6th.		Very fine day. Battalion moved to Brigade Support. Parade at 7.50 a.m. Arrived at 11.15 a.m. Battalion. Headquarters at X. 10. b. Orderly Room to Transport Lines on BRICKFIELDS.		
BRIGADE SUPPORT.	Oct. 7th.		Fine day. Battalion in Brigade Support. Casualties 2 other ranks wounded.		
CLOSE SUPPORT.	Oct. 8th.		Fine day. Battalion took over position previously occupied by 2nd Canadian Battalion in SUGAR & CABLE Trenches. Battalion Headquarters in GUN-PIT ROAD. Working Party of 3 Officers and 80 other ranks carrying material to forward area. <u>Casualties</u> :- 2 other ranks Killed 2 other ranks Wounded.		

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

PAGE 2.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

OCTOBER, 1916.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	5	Remarks and references to Appendices
CLOSE SUPPORT.	Oct. 9th.		Very fine day. Battalion in dug-outs and trenches in close support. <u>Casualties</u> 4 other ranks wounded.		
---	Oct. 10th.		Fine day. 14th Canadian Battalion relieved by 7th Canadian Battalion in Close Support. 14th Canadian Battalion to Bivouacs on BRICKFIELDS. Machine Guns of 14th Battalion loaned to 8th Canadian Battalion.		II/2.
SOMME SALIENT BRICKFIELDS.	Oct. 11th.		Fair day - Rainy at intervals. Battalion resting in bivouacs on BRICKFIELDS.		
---	Oct. 12th.		Fine day. Battalion resting on BRICKFIELDS.		
---	Oct. 13th.		Fair day. 14th Canadian Battalion relieved the 5th Canadian Battalion in Brigade Reserve X. ll. a. "Fall In" 12.45 p.m. Arrived destination at 3.15 p.m. Working Parties totaling 3 Officers and 100 other ranks.		II/3.
BRIGADE RESERVE.	Oct. 14th.		Fair day. Working Parties totaling 3 Officers and approximately 100 other ranks furnished. Casualties - Nil.		
---	Oct. 15th.		Fine day. 14th Canadian Battalion relieved by 7th Canadian Battalion. 14th Canadian Battalion to bivouacs on BRICKFIELDS.		
BRICK-FIELDS WARLOY.	Oct. 16th.		VERY FINE DAY. Battalion commenced the march to BERTHONVAL AREA. "Fall In" 10.30 a.m. and marched to the outskirts of BOUZINCOURT, where Battalion halted for lunch. Battalion "Fall In" again at 2 p.m. and marched to WARLOY. Battalion arrived in billets at 3.40 p.m.		II/4.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

PAGE 3.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

OCTOBER, 1916.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date 1916.	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
WARLOY to VAL-DE- MAISON.	Oct. 17th.		Fair day. Battalion resumed the march. Arrived at destination at 4.10 p.m. Battalion in tented Camp on the outskirts of the village of VAL-DE-MAISON.	
VAL-DE- MAISON to PERNOIS.	Oct. 18th.		Wet in the early morning, changing to a fine clear day. Cold wind. Battalion "Fell In" at 9.30 a.m. and marched to PERNOIS. Battalion in billets at 2.50 p.m.	
PERNOIS.	Oct. 19th.		Very wet morning. Rainy and fide at intervals throughout the remainder of the day. Battalion resting. Working Party of 6 other ranks furnished for cleaning 'muck' and garbage from the streets and ditches of the village.	
PERNOIS to PROUVILLE.	Oct. 20th.		Very fine day. Battalion resumed the march. "Fall In" 8.30 a.m. and marched to PROUVILLE. Battalion arrived in billets at 1.30 p.m.	II/5.
PROUVILLE to BOFFLES & FORTEL.	Oct. 21st		Very fine day - Bright sunshine and fresh wind. Battalion "Fell In" at 9 a.m. and marched to BOFFLES and FORTEL. Arrived at 2.30 p.m. Headquarters and Details billeted at BOFFLES and Companies at FORTEL.	
BOFFLES & FORTEL to PETIT HOUVIN & LA MONT-JOIE FARM.	Oct. 22nd.		Very fine day - Bright sunshine and Fresh wind. Battalion "Fell In" 9 a.m. and marched to PETIT HOUVIN and LA MONT-JOIE FARM. Arrived in billets at 1 p.m. Battalion Headquarters and Details at PETIT HOUVIN and Companies at LA MONT-JOIE FARM.	II/6.
PETIT HOUVIN & LA MONT-JOIE FARM to TERNAS.	Oct. 23rd.		Fair day. Misty during the morning and cloudy throughout the afternoon. Battalion "Fell In" at 10.30 a.m. and marched to TERNAS. Arrived 12.30 p.m. Battalion billeted in village.	II/7 IV/1.
TERNAS to MAGNICOURT.	Oct. 24th.		Very wet day. Battalion "Fell In" at 10.30 a.m. and marched to MAGNICOURT. Arrived in Billets at 1.15 pm.	II/8.
MAGNICOURT	Oct. 25th.		Very wet day. Battalion resting at MAGNICOURT. Muster Parade and Inspection of Gas helmets in afternoon.	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Page 4.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

OCTOBER, 1916.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date 1916	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	5	Remarks and references to Appendices
MAGNICOURT to ESTREE GAUCHIE	Oct. 26th.		Fair day - Misty. Battalion "Fell In" at 8 a.m. and marched to ESTREE GAUCHIE. Arrived 11.45 a.m.		II/9.
ESTREE GAUCHIE to BERTHONVAL AREA.	Oct. 27th.		Changeable day, showery, cold and gusty. Battalion "Fell In" 1 p.m. and marched to Brigade Reserve in BERTHONVAL AREA. Arrived 5.25 p.m.		II/10.
BRIGADE RESERVE	Oct. 28th.		Fair day - very cold and windy. Battalion in Brigade Reserve. Forward area reconnoitred by the Officer Commanding and Company Commanders in the morning, and by the 2nd in Command and a proportionate number of non-commissioned Officers in the afternoon. Working party of 1 Officer and 75 other ranks furnished for general repairs to support trenches and carrying material.		
---do---	Oct. 29th.		Fair day. Battalion in Brigade Reserve (dug-outs and trenches). A working party of 1 Officer and 75 other ranks furnished at 8 a.m. for work on deep dug-outs in support line of trenches and carrying material.		
---do---	Oct. 30th.		Fair day - windy and showery. Battalion in Brigade Reserve. Working parties amounting to 3 Officers and 150 other ranks furnished deepening and rivetting support line of trenches, carrying material and constructing deep dug-outs.		
---do---	Oct. 31st.		Fair day - cold and showery. Battalion in Brigade Reserve. Working Parties amounting to 100 other ranks and two Officers furnished for work on support line trenches and carrying material.  Reinforcement of Officers received, vide attached nominal roll.		IV/2.
			<i>R. B. Clark</i> Lieut.-Colonel, Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion.		



14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR

DIARY

OCTOBER

1916.

APPENDICES 11/1 to 11/10, and IV/1 to IV/2.



by  
 Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.  
 -----ooOoo-----

Appendix  
 II/1.

In the Field,  
 October 7th, 1916.

Reference Trench Map Sheet LE SARS.  
 1/10,000.

- Operations 1. The operations detailed in 3rd CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE Operation Order No. 100 of October 5th will be carried out tomorrow, October 8th, at 4.50 a.m. ZERO hour. The 2nd CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE will be in Divisional Reserve.
- Objectives for 3rd Bde 2. As previously notified, except for M.8.a.6.1. read M.8.d.6.1.  
 LEFT:- 13th BATTALION - REGINA TRENCH. - M.13.b.6.1. to M.14.a.2.4 to M.14.b.0.4.
- Bde Support. 3. The 15th BATTALION will keep two Companies in close support to the 13th and 16th BATTALIONS. The two remaining Companies will be located in SUGAR TRENCH unless the Officer Commanding 15th BATTALION. can place them in a better position in close support.  
 The Officers Commanding 13th and 16th BATTALIONS may each call upon one of the supporting Companies of the 15th BATTALION when urgent necessity arises.  
 In this event the two Companies in the SUGAR TRENCH will be moved forward to close support and will be replaced by two Companies of the 14th CANADIAN BATTN.
- Movement. 4. In the event of two Companies of the 15th BATTALION being moved up to close support, the 14th CANADIAN BATTALION with half of the strength of the BATTALION including:-  
 All Companies.  
 Machine Gun Section.  
 Bombing Platoon.  
 Intelligence Section.  
 Signal Section.
- move up to SUGAR TRENCH and occupy it. Companies and Details will "Fall in, at BATTALION HEADQUARTERS and will be under the command of Major J. C. K. CARSON. Lieutenant W. J. HOLLIDAY will be second in command. Lieutenant J. F. FITZPATRICK in charge of Machine Guns and Sergeant WILSON in charge of Bombers and four men of Intelligence Section.  
 Immediately on arrival at SUGAR TRENCH Major CARSON will report to Officer Commanding 15th BATTALION giving his location and disposition.
- Rations. 5. 48 hours rations will be carried. All water bottles to be filled and extra water to be carried and two bombs per man.
- Breakfast to be at 5 a.m.
5. ACKNOWLEDGE.

(Signed) B. F. Davidson,

Lieutenant,  
 Act/Adjutant,  
 14th Canadian Battalion.



## OPERATION ORDER NO. 91.

SECRET.

by  
 Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion.  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

-----ooOoo-----

In the Field,  
 October 10th, 1916.

- Relief. 1. The 7th CANADIAN BATTALION now in Brigade Reserve will relieve the 14th CANADIAN BATTALION on the night of the 10/11th in Brigade Support.
- Movement. 2. Companies and Details on being relieved will proceed independently to billets in ALBERT.
- M.G. Bty. 3. Transport for Machine Gun Battery will be supplied by the 8th CANADIAN BATTALION. GUNS must be at JUNCTION of CABLE TRENCH and HAPAUME ROAD at 6.30 p.m. sharp.
- Hot Tea. 4. Hot Tea will be served to troops at junction of roads near LA BOISELLE.
- Officers' 5. Will be at Junction of roads at LA BOISELLE.  
 Horses.
- Coys. & 6. Will report by telephone to Battalion Headquarters  
 Details. immediately relief is completed. Use BAS HOGIA for relief.  
 Upon arrival at ALBERT Companies and Details will submit "Marching In" States.
- Sanitation 7. The trenches must be left in a clean and sanitary condition and receipts obtained for same.
- Guides. 8. Two guides per Company and one from each Detail will meet 7th BATTALION at a rendezvous to be named later.
9. ACKNOWLEDGE.

(Signed) B. F. Davidson.

Lieutenant,  
 Act/Adjutant,  
 14th Canadian Battalion.

II/2



SECRET.

OPERATION ORDERS 92

No 92

by  
Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

Appendix

11/3.

Field October 13th 1916.

Movement.

1. The 14th Canadian Battalion will relieve the 5th Canadian Battalion in Brigade Reserve X.II.A.

Parade.

2. Battalion will fall in in front of Orderly Room ready to march off at 12.45 p.m. Companies and Details will move off independently at intervals of 300 yards at 1.00 p.m. in the following order:-

No 1 Company  
No 2 Company  
No 3 Company  
No 4 Company  
Machine Gun Section  
Bombers  
Intelligence  
Medical Section  
Pioneers  
Banners and Headquarters.

and will proceed to Red Cross Flag at POZIERES where they will be met by guides.

Rations:

3. Iron rations to be carried, and two days dry rations will be issued to-night at Chalk Pits.

Bombs.

4. Immediately upon arrival Bombs are to be drawn from Chalk Pits at the rate of 4 Bombs per man and 12 per Battalion Bombers.

Field Kitchens

5. Field Kitchens will follow in rear of column and take up position in Chalk Pits.

Officers' HORSES.

6. To be at Battalion Headquarters at 12.45 p.m.

Packs.

7. Will be turned into Quartermaster's Stores before marching off.

Reports

8. Immediately upon arrival disposition states are to be turned in and a rough sketch furnished of position.

Officers in Command of Companies and Details are responsible that men do not consume their extra dry rations until they are in the front line.

ACKNOWLEDGE.

*A. W. Anderson*  
Lieut.,  
Act. Adjt.,  
14th Canadian Battalion.

Issued at..... by Orderly.

Copy No 1 to No 1 Coy.	Copy No 5 to R.S.M.
" 2 " 2 "	" 6 Intelp. Officer
" 3 " 3 "	" 7 Bombing Officer
" 4 " 4 "	" 8 M.G. Officer
" 9 Orderly Room	" 10 Adjutant.
" 11 2nd Can. Inf. Bde.	" 12 Q.M. and Exp. Officer
" 13 War Diary	" 14 War Diary.





OPERATION ORDER NO. 93.  
By Lieut-Col. R. P. Clark.....  
Cmdg. 14th...Canadian Battalion, R. M. R.

Appendix

II/4

10

Ref. Lens Sheet 11.  
1/100000

Dated Oct. 16th. 1916.

1. Movement. The 14th. Canadian Battalion will move to WARLOY on Oct. 16th. 1916.
2. Parade. The Battalion will parade in full marching order on road in front of Battalion Headquarters, in the usual order of march at 9.45 A.M.
3. March. The Brigade will march in the following order:-
  - 14th. Canadian Battalion.
  - 15th. Canadian Battalion.
  - 1st. Can. Pioneer Battalion.
  - 2nd. Canadian Battalion.
  - 1st. Canadian M.G.Co.
4. Transport. Transport will be Brigaded under Capt. Paton Transport Officer 2nd. Canadian Bn. and will march in rear of the column in the above order.
5. Starting Point. The starting point will be on the main ALBERT- BOUZINCOURT road 200 yds. North west of the railwar-crossing.
6. Bivouacs. 500 yards interval will be maintained between Units, and 25-yards between Companies.
7. Billeting. A-Billeting party of one Officer ( Lt. A. L. McLean) and one N. C. O. per Company and Detail are to report at Battalion Hqs. at 9.45 A. M. and in charge of Lt. McLean will proceed to WARLOY and report to Staff Captain G.K. Killam at the Town Majors Office at 2 P.M.
8. Halt. A halt will be made at BOUZINCOURT at a point to be detailed en route and the march resumed at 2 P.M. at this point the field Cookers will be brought up and a hot meal served to the men.
9. Rests. A halt will be made at 10 minutes to the hour and the march resumed at the hour.
10. Officers Baggage. Officers baggage must be ready for collection in front of the Orderly Room at 9.15 A.M.
11. Sanitation. All billets must be left in a clean and sanitary condition.
12. Bivouacs. Bivouacs must be turned into the Q.M. Stores not later than 9 A.M.
13. ACKNOWLEDGE.

*H. P. ...*  
Lieut.  
Asst. Adj. 14th. Canadian Battalion.



by

Lieut. Colonel R. P. Clark,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

Appendix

11/5.

11

Field Order 19th 1916.

Reference Map Lens Sheet  
1/100,000

- Movement. 1. The 14th Canadian Battalion will march to the RIBEAUCOURT area tomorrow, October 20th.
- Route. 2. The route will be via ST LEGER les DOMART-DOMART.
- Parade. 3. The Battalion will parade at 8.45 a.m. on the road in front of Battalion Headquarters in the last order of march.
- Starting Point. 4. Starting point - Road Junction LE SOUDET, 1,100 yards W. of Brigade Headquarters on the HALLOY, BERTEAUCOURT Road.
- Order of March. 5. The Brigade will march in the following order:-
- | UNIT            | TIME TO PASS | STARTING POINT. | DESTINATION.       |
|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 13th Bn.        | 8.30 a.m.    | LE SOUDET       | BEAUMETZ-PROUVILLE |
| 14th Bn.        | 9.16 a.m.    | "               | " AREA "           |
| 16th Bn.        | 9.30 a.m.    | "               | " "                |
| (A) M.G. Coy.)  |              |                 |                    |
| T.M. Bty.)      | 9.40 a.m.    | "               | " "                |
| 1st Halt.       | 9.50 a.m.    |                 |                    |
| 15th Bn.        | 10.00 a.m.   |                 | RIBEAUCOURT        |
| Div'l Train     | 10.15 a.m.   |                 | "                  |
| 1st Ent. Bn.    | 10.33 a.m.   |                 | DOMESMONT          |
| 3rd Fla Coy     | 10.39 a.m.   |                 | "                  |
| No 3 Field Amb. | 10.49 a.m.   |                 | EPECAMPS.          |
- Transport 6. Transport will march in rear of Battalion.
- Officers' Baggage. 7. Officers' Baggage MUST be ready for collection at 8.00 a.m. and piled outside their billets.
- Saddle Horses 8. To be at Battalion Headquarters at 8.45 a.m.
- Meals. 9. A halt will be made at a point to be notified later when the noon day meal will be served. At this point kitchens will be brought up to their respective units. Details will mess with kitchens as laid down in Battalion Orders of 29.8.16.
- Halts. 10. The first halt will be made at 9.50 a.m. and thereafter at 10 minutes to the clock hour.
- Synchron-ization of Watches 11. A Staff Officer will be at starting point to synchronize watches.
- Field Ambul-ance 12. The O.U. 3rd Field Ambulance will detail two horse ambulances to follow in rear of column.

11

Brigade Headquarters. 13. Brigade Headquarters will be closed at 8.30am to-morrow and will be established upon arrival at RIBEAUCOURT at 10.30 a.m.

Reports 14. To head of columns. 15 Acknowledge.

Lieut and A/Ajt., 14th Canadian Battalion.

- 1. The Battalion will march on the morning of 10/11/44.
- 2. The Battalion will march in front of the order of march.
- 3. The Battalion will march in front of the order of march.
- 4. The Battalion will march in front of the order of march.
- 5. The Battalion will march in front of the order of march.
- 6. The Battalion will march in front of the order of march.
- 7. The Battalion will march in front of the order of march.
- 8. The Battalion will march in front of the order of march.
- 9. The Battalion will march in front of the order of march.
- 10. The Battalion will march in front of the order of march.
- 11. The Battalion will march in front of the order of march.
- 12. The Battalion will march in front of the order of march.
- 13. The Battalion will march in front of the order of march.
- 14. The Battalion will march in front of the order of march.
- 15. The Battalion will march in front of the order of march.

16. The Battalion will march in front of the order of march.

17. The Battalion will march in front of the order of march.

18. The Battalion will march in front of the order of march.

11



by  
 Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

12

-----ooOoo-----

Reference LENS Sheet 11.  
 1/100000.

In the Field,  
 October 21st, 1916.

- Movement. 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will move tomorrow to LA MONT JOIE FARM and PETIT HOUVIN via route LIGNY-SUR-CANCHE, NUNCG.
- Order of March. 2. The column will march as follows:-  
 15th Battalion.  
 14th Battalion.  
 Brigade Headquarters.  
 Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark will be in command.
- Transport. 3. Will accompany Battalion.
- Halts. 4. Will be made at 10 minutes to the clock hour.
- Parade. 5. Battalion will "Fall In" ready to march off at 9.40 a.m. sharp, head of column on road at RAILWAY CROSSING near billets of Nos. 1 and 4 Companies, FORTEL.
- Billeting Party. 6. Captain F.B.D. Larken. two N.C.O's per Company, one from Machine Gun, and one from each Unit will "Fall In" at billets at RAILWAY CROSSING, before mentioned, at 7.00 a.m. sharp to arrange billets at LA MONT JOIE FARM and PETIT HOUVIN.
- Officers' Baggage. 7. Will be collected at 8.45 a.m. (BOFFLES) and 9.15 a.m. (FORTEL).
- Officers' Chargers. 8. Will be at their Billets at 9.20 a.m. The Transport Officer to have a horse for the Billeting Officer at meeting place at 7.00 a.m.

(Signed) Arthur Plow.

Lieutenant and Adjutant.  
 14th Canadian Battalion.

Copy No. 1 to No. 1 Company.  
 " 2 " 2 "  
 " 3 " 3 "  
 " 4 " 4 "  
 " 5 " Regimental Sergeant Major.  
 " 6 " Machine Gun Officer.  
 " 7 " Intelligence Officer.  
 " 8 " Bombers.  
 " 9 " 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade.  
 " 10 " Transport Officer.  
 " 11 " Quartermaster.  
 " 12 " War Diary  
 " 13 " " "  
 " 14 " Orderly Room.  
 " 15 " Adjutant.



by  
 Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

Appendix

II/7.

-----ooOoo-----

In the Field,  
 October 22nd 1916.

13

Reference Map Sheet LENS 11.  
 1/100,000.

Movement. 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will march to TERNAS on October 23rd, 1916.

Column. 2. The column will march as follows:-

15th Canadian Battalion.  
 14th Canadian Battalion.

Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark will be in command of the Column.

Parade. 3. The BATTALION will parade, ready to move off at 10.30 a.m. sharp at the FORKS in ROADS 200 yards SOUTH of the First letter "E" in BUNEVILLE.

Transport. 4. Transport will accompany Unit.

Halts. 5. At ten minutes to each clock hour.

Officers' Baggage... 6. Will be collected at LA MONT-JOIE FARM at 8 a.m. and at PETIT HOUVIN at 9 a.m.

Road Control. 7. Immediately upon arrival at TERNAS, Major CRAWFORD, Lieutenant BEAGLEY and twenty-five other ranks of No. 2 Company, will take steps to see that the Road through TERNAS is kept clear for the passage of the balance of the Brigade Column (13th Battalion, 16th Battalion, 1st Entrenching Battalion, 3rd Field Company, C.E., Machine-Gun Company, Trench Mortar Battery and Field Ambulance).

8. ACKNOWLEDGE.

*[Signature]*  
 Lieutenant,  
 Adjutant, 14th Canadian Battalion.

Issued at.....by Orderly.

Copy No. 1 to No. 1 Company.  
 " 2 " " 2 "  
 " 3 " " 3 "  
 " 4 " " 4 "  
 " 5 " Regtl. Sergt. Major.  
 " 6 " Transport Officer.  
 " 7 " Quartermaster.  
 " 8 " Intelligence.  
 " 9 " Bombers.  
 " 10 " Machine Gun.  
 " 11 " Orderly Room.  
 " 12 " Adjutant.  
 " 13 " 3rd Can. Inf. Bde.  
 " 14 " 15th Canadian Battalion.  
 " 15 " War Diary.  
 " 16 " War Diary.





SECRET

OPERATION ORDERS No 99

Copy No....

by  
Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

Appendix

II/8.

14

Reference Map Lens Sheet  
1/300,000

Field October 25rd 1916.

- Movement 1. The 14th Canadian Battalion will march to  
MAGNICOURT on October 24th via BAILLEUL -EUX-  
CORNEILLES.
- Parade. 2. The Battalion will parade, head of column on  
road, 250 yards N.E. of Orderly Room ready to move  
off at 10.15 a.m.
- Column. 3. Brigade Column will march as follows:-  
Brigade Headquarters.  
16th Battalion.  
15th Battalion.  
M.C. Company  
13th Battalion.  
14th Battalion.  
T.M. Battery  
No 4 Divisional Train.
- Transport 4. Will accompany unit.
- Billeting 5. Captain Larken, Lieut Hodgson and Intelligence  
Section will make billeting arrangements for the  
entire Battalion.
- Officers'  
Baggage. 6. Will be collected at 8.50 a.m.  
7. ACKNOWLEDGE.

*Arthur Elms*  
Lieut and Adjt.,  
14th Canadian Battalion.

Issued at .... by Orderly  
Copy No 1 for No 1 Company  
" 2 " 2 "  
" 3 " 3 "  
" 4 " 4 "  
" 5 Regimental Sergeant Major  
" 6 Machine Gun Officer  
" 7 Bombing Officer  
" 8 Intelligence Officer  
" 9 Transport Officer  
" 10 Quartermaster  
" 11 Brigade.  
" 12 Adjutant.  
" 13 War Diary  
" 14 "



by  
 Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.  
 -----oOo-----

Appendix 15  
 II/9.

Reference Map Lens Sheet.

1/100,000

Field October 25th 1916.

- Movement. 1. The 14th Canadian Battalion will march to ESTREE-GAUCHIE via GAUCHIN-LEGAL on October 26th.
- Column. 2. The column will march as follows:-  
 15th Canadian Battalion,  
 Trench Mortar Battery,  
 14th Canadian Battalion.  
 Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark in command of column.
- Parade. 3. The Battalion will be on parade ready to march off at 8.00 a.m. sharp, head of column on road in line with Village Church. Accurate parade states must be rendered by 7.45 a.m.
- Transport 4. Will march in rear of Battalion.
- Halts. 5. At 10 minutes to each clock hour.
- Billeting 6. Captain F.B.D. Larken, Lieut T. Hodgson and entire Intelligence Section will fall in at Orderly Room at 6.00 a.m. sharp and proceed to destination, arrange Billets and guide units to same.
- Starting Point. 7. Head of Battalion will pass Starting Point, the Church at HERMIN at 9.30 a.m.
- Officers' Baggage. 8. Will be collected at 7.00 a.m.  
 9. ACKNOWLEDGE.

*Arthur Law*  
 Lieut and Adjt.,  
 14th Canadian Battalion.

Issued at..... by Orderly  
 Copy No 1 to No 1 Company  
 " 2 " 2 "  
 " 3 " 3 "  
 " 4 " 4 "  
 " 5 Regimental Sergeant Major.  
 " 6 Machine Gun Officer  
 " 7 Bombing Officer  
 " 8 Intelligence Officer  
 " 9 Transport Officer  
 " 10 Quartermaster  
 " 11 3rd Can. Infy Bde.  
 " 12 Orderly Room  
 " 13 War Diary  
 " 14 "



by  
 Lieut Colonel R. P. Clark,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

Appendix II/10.

16

Reference Map Lens Sheet  
1/100,000

Field October 26th 1916.

- Movement.** 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will relieve the 7th NORTH HANTS REGIMENT, 73rd Brigade, in reserve on October 27th.
- Parade.** 2. The Battalion will parade in full marching order promptly, at the following times:-
- "A" Nos. 3 and 4 Companies 12.30 p.m. - Position- CABARET ROUGE. Guides (1 per platoon) will meet these units at VILLERS AU BOIS X.19.a.9.0. at 2.30 p.m.
- "B" Nos 1 and 2 Companies 1.15 p.m. Destination- MAISTRE LINE Guides (1 per platoon) will meet these units at VILLERS AU BOIS X.19.a.9.0. at 3.15 p.m.
- "C" Battalion Headquarters 1.15 p.m. - Destination- DUCK WALK X.28.b.8.6. Guides will meet this unit at VILLERS AU BOIS X.19.a.9.0. at 3.15 p.m.
- Platoons will move forward from VILLERS AU BOIS at 5 minute intervals
- Machine Guns** 3. Machine Guns will not parade as a unit but will be attached to their respective companies.
- Bombers.** 4. Squads of Bombers will be attached to each Company
- Signals** 5. Will be attached to each Company
- Meals** 6. All men will receive their Mid-day meal before parade and their evening meal upon arrival at destination.
- Officers' Baggage** 7. Will be collected as follows:-
- Group "A"..... 11.15 p.m.  
 " "B"..... 12.15 p.m.  
 " "C"..... 12.30 p.m.
- Trench Stores** 8. Company Commanders will carefully check any articles handed over to them and a copy of the receipt handed over to the unit relieved must be turned into Orderly Room without delay.
- Reports.** 9. As soon as possible after arrival at destination accurate reports must be rendered to Battalion Headquarters accounting for every man on the strength of the unit.

ACKNOWLEDGES

*Arthur G. Lewis*  
 Lieut and Adj. for O.C.  
 14th Canadian Battalion.

Issued at... by orderly  
 Copy No 1 to No 1 Company

- " 2 " 2 "  
 " 3 " 3 "  
 " 4 " 4 "  
 " 5 Regimental Sergeant Major  
 " 6 Machine Gun Officer  
 " 7 Intelligence Officer  
 " 8 Bombing Officer  
 " 9 Quartermaster  
 " 10 Transport Officer

Copy No 11 to 3rd Can. Inf Bde.  
 " 12 Orderly Room  
 " 13 War Diary



HONOURS AND REWARDS

Appendix IV/1.

ROYAL MONTREAL REGIMENT

14 CANADIAN BATTALION

17

Oct. 30.

For the month of October 1916

MILITARY CROSS

Major J. C. K. Carson  
Lieut. W. J. Holliday

DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL

26680 A/C.S.M. Close A.  
A44200 Pte. R. W. Jones  
25858 Pte. J. Labelle

MILITARY MEDAL

63646 Sgt. Miller W. H.  
63840 P/Sgt. Snideman W.  
25994 Sgt. Peat W.  
457253 A/Cpl. Taylor E. S.  
440290 Pte. A. L. Bagshaw  
441855 Pte. J. Bertram.

*Arthur Jones*  
*Lt. & Capt.*





COMMISSIONS GIVEN FROM THE RANKS.

14th Canadian Battalion - Royal Montreal Regiment.

October, 1916.

Lieutenant H. Armstrong.  
 " T. G. Beagley.  
 " G. A. McLellan.  
 " E. Cowen.

-----ooOoo-----

REINFORCEMENTS OF OFFICERS RECEIVED OCTOBER 30th, 1916.

Major A. T. Powell.

Captain D. Worrall.

Lieutenant F. Owen.

" W. W. Pickup.  
 " E. A. Adams.  
 " W. A. Kirkconnell.  
 " McRae, D. M.  
 " H. G. T. Penny.  
 " G. S. Ashby.  
 " C. F. Falkenberg.  
 " G. Hiem.  
 " J. P. O'Connor.  
 " L. R. Richards.  
 " J. E. Bessor.  
 " J. L. Stevenson.  
 " D. W. Clarkson.

-----OOooOOoo-----

*[Handwritten signature]*  
 Lt. & Capt.

CONFIDENTIAL  
WAR DIARY  
OF  
14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION  
NOVEMBER 1916.  
WITH APPENDICES 1 to 4.  
VOLUME 16 - 11.

WAR DIARY

14th Canadian Battalion 1st Canadian Division,  
from 1st to 30th November, 1916.

Volume 21.

Diary Text

5 Pages.

Appendix I

Situation Report dated the 6th November, 1916.

" 2

O. O. No. 102 dated the 2nd November, 1916 Relief of 13th Cdn. Bn. by 14th Cdn. Bn. in the Left subsection on Friday 3rd November, 1916.

"

Special Operation Order by Lieut. Col. R.P. Clark commanding 4th Cdn. Bn. Firing of a mine by 176th Tunnelling Company on the 27th November.

" 3

Memorandums by Lt. Col. R.D. Clark M.C. commanding 14th Battalion. Contingencies to be provided for in connection with the occupation of a mine crater

Report on consolidation of mine crater right subsection Garency section on the 27th November.

" 4

Summary of Intelligence for the month of November.

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

NOVEMBER

1916.

WAR

DIARY

TEXT.

FALSE DOCKET

11-11-16  
11-11-16  
11-11-16

## WAR DIARY

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

PAGE 1.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

NOVEMBER 1916.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date 1916.	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
BERTHONVAL AREA. BRIGADE SUPPORT.	Nov. 1st.		<i>Reserve</i> Fine day - clear and cold, rain towards evening. Battalion in dug-outs. Working Parties:- 2 Officers and 100 other ranks carrying material, cleaning up and revetting communication and front line trenches.	
	Nov. 2nd.		Fair day. Working Parties amounting to 3 Officers and 150 other ranks furnished. Work on front line and Communication Trenches - revetting and constructing deep dug-outs.	
TRENCHES. LEFT SUB-SECTOR BERTHONVAL SECTOR.	Nov. 3rd.		Fair day - dull. 14th Canadian Battalion commenced the relief of the 13th Canadian Battalion in front line and support trenches of Left sub-sector, BERTHONVAL SECTOR, at 11.30 a.m. Relief complete 2.20 p.m. Working Parties totalling 1 Officer and 80 other ranks, building bombing and listening posts and general trench repairs.	
-do-	Nov. 4th.		Fine day - Wind Light S.E. Showery at dusk. Considerable trench mortar activity from 10.20 a.m. to 11.25 a.m. Our trench mortars kept up desultory fire throughout the afternoon. Working Parties. 2 Officers and 117 other ranks worked on repairs to our trenches where destroyed by enemy trench mortar fire. Revetting and wiring. Casualties. The Officer Commanding, Lieut.-Colonel R.P. Clark, slightly wounded in thigh by splinter of minenwerfer, but remained on duty. 1 O.R. wounded.	
-do-	Nov. 5th.		Fine clear day, but cold with strong S.W. Wind. A few minutes action by our heavy trench mortars at 1 a.m. and our light trench mortars at 2 a.m. Test S.O.S. Signals by telephone. Result of last test - 40 seconds. Working Parties. 221 other ranks under 2 Officers worked rebuilding and repairing trenches where necessary, and building overhead cover. Casualties - 3 other ranks wounded.	
-do-	Nov. 6th.		Misty day with slight rain. One-half Battalion practised test 'Stand To' at 11.45 a.m. remaining half at 4 p.m. Our trench mortars, both heavy and light, active at 12.15 p.m. and 2 p.m., and spasmodically throughout the remainder of the afternoon. Working Parties of 1 Officer and 130 other ranks worked repairing portions of trench destroyed by enemy trench mortar fire, revetting and wiring. Casualties - 1 O.R. wounded.	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

PAGE 2.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

NOVEMBER 1916.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
TRENCHES LEFT SUB- SECTOR BERTHONVAL SECTOR	Nov. 7th.		Very wet day. Orderly Room and sap leading to Officers' Mess caved in. Parapet of trenches collapsed in several places. Working Parties - 94 other ranks under supervision of sappers worked on cleaning up where trenches had collapsed, wiring and carrying material.	
-do-	Nov. 8th.		Morning showery - remainder of day fine. Our trench mortars very active spasmodically throughout the day. Retaliation very feeble. only one or two large calibre shells and a few trench mortar bombs returned. Working Parties. 1 Officer and 121 other ranks worked cleaning up collapsed trenches, raising parapets, revetting, wiring, and carrying material.	
-do-	Nov. 9th		Fine day. Morning quiet. No activity except for a few occasional rounds by our trench mortars. At 3.30 p.m. our trench mortars bombarded the enemy front line trenches for about an hour. Enemy retaliated with a few rounds heavy calibre artillery. Working Parties. 1 Officer and 88 other ranks worked cleaning trenches, revetting and general repairs to trenches.	
-do-	Nov. 10th.		Very fine day. 14th Canadian Battalion relieved by 13th Canadian Battalion. Relief complete at 12.45 p.m. 14th Canadian Battalion moved to reserve position at ESTREE-GAUCHY. Arrived in billets at 4.45pm	
BERTHONVAL AREA. DIVISIONAL RESERVE.	Nov. 11th.		Fine day. Morning spent in rest and general cleaning up of equipment etc. Battalion Muster parade and Kit Inspection in the afternoon. A working party of 50 other ranks furnished for work at artillery wagon lines.	
-do-	Nov. 12th		Fair day - dull and slightly misty in the forenoon. Syllabus of Training attached. Working Party of 15 other ranks furnished for work at artillery wagon lines, and a party of 8 other ranks for road work in ESTREE-GAUCHY.	
-do-	Nov. 13th		Fine day. One half Battalion issued with new Box respirator, and passed through a slight gas test. Syllabus of training attached. Working Parties same as on 12th inst.	

## 14th CANADIAN BATTALION.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## WAR DIARY

or

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

NOVEMBER 1916.

Army Form C. 2118

PAGE 3.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
BERTHOVAL AREA DIVISIONAL RESERVE ESTREE-GAUCHY.	1916 Nov. 14th.		Fine day. Remaining half of the Battalion issued with new Box respirators. Lecture by the General Officer Commanding, 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade, Brig.-Genl. G. S. Tuxford, C.M.G., on Discipline to all Officers in the afternoon, and a lecture by the Brigade Major 3rd Brigade in the evening on "System of holding Front Line Trenches by a Series of Strong points". Syllabus of training attached. Working Parties. 15 other ranks worked loading wagons with gravel for road, and 8 O.R. cleaning roads in ESTREE-GAUCHY.	
-do-	Nov. 15th.		Fine day. Company Commanders and Officer Commanding reconnoitred the front line trenches, right sub-sector, CARENCY SECTOR. Lewis Gun inspection. Syllabus of training attached. Working parties. 15 other ranks worked digging practice trenches at the Divisional school MAISENIL BOUCHE, and 8 other ranks worked on roads in ESTREE GAUCHY.	
-do-	Nov. 16th.		Fine day. Syllabus of Training attached. Working Parties. 15 other ranks worked on practice trenches at Divisional School, MAISENIL BOUCHE and 8 other ranks worked on the roads ESTREE-GAUCHY.	
-do-	Nov. 17th.		Dull day - rainy. No parades. Working Parties - 15 other ranks digging practice trenches at the Divisional School MAISENIL BOUCHE and 8 other ranks working on the roads in ESTREE-GAUCHY.	
-do- TRENCHES RIGHT SUB-SECTOR CARENCY SECTOR	Nov. 18th. Nov. 19th.		Light fall of snow during the night. Day cold, rainy and misty. 14th Canadian Battalion relieved the 15th Canadian Battalion in the right sub-sector, CARENCY SECTOR. Relief complete at 12.45 p.m. Working Parties 1 Officer 105 other ranks -General repairs. Wet day. Slight spasmodic trench mortar activity through-out the day. Working Parties - 2 Officers and 210 other ranks worked revetting, wiring, clearing saps and carrying material.	



## 14th CANADIAN BATTALION.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

Army Form C. 2118.

PAGE 4.

(Erase heading not required.)

NOVEMBER 1916.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
TRENCHES RIGHT SUB- SECTOR	Nov. 20th.		Fair day. Very quiet day. Working Parties:- 3 Officers and 216 other ranks furnished for work on building traverses, deepening and revetting trenches, wiring and general repairs.	
GARENOY SECTOR	Nov. 21st		Wet day. Day quiet except for sharp trench mortar action at 2.30 p.m. of an hours endurance. Four test S.O.S. Rockets sent up from Battalion Headquarters between 9 p.m. and mid-night. Working Parties:- 2 Officers and 145 other ranks furnished. Work - revetting, construction of firing steps, wiring, and carrying material. Casualties 2 other ranks killed.	
-do-	Nov. 22nd.		Very fine day. Two test S.O.S. Rockets sent up at 11 a.m. 14th Canadian Battalion relieved by the 13th Canadian Battalion, relief complete at 12 noon. 14th Canadian Battalion to Brigade Reserve at VILLERS-AU-BOIS arrived in Billets at 3.30 p.m. Battalion billeted in huts and farm buildings. Working parties. 2 Officers and 80 other ranks furnished for carrying parties.	
BREGADE RESERVE	Nov. 23rd.		Fine day. Morning devoted to personnel cleaning up and that of equipment, also kit inspection. In the afternoon at 2 p.m. inspection by the Officer Commanding. Working Parties:- 5 Officers and 184 other ranks furnished for carrying wiring material and carrying spoil from saps in the front line trenches.	
GARENOY SECTOR VILLERS- AU-BOIS.	Nov. 24th.		Fine day. Training - Squad, platoon and Company drill. Gas Helmet drill. Lectures on Discipline. Working Parties - 5 Officers and 184 other ranks furnished for work on the saps in the front line trenches and carrying material for the wiring section.	
-do-	Nov. 25th.		Very wet day. All parades cancelled on account of the bad weather. Lecture to the N.C.O's of the Battalion by the Adjutant on interior economy. Major-General A.W. Currie, C.B. 1st Divisional Commander visited the Battalion. Working Parties. 5 Officers and 184 other ranks furnished for work on the saps in the front line trenches and carrying wiring material.	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

NOVEMBER 1916.

PAGE 35

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
TRENCHES RIGHT SUB SECTOR	1916. Nov. 26th		Fine day. Very quiet day. Working parties:- 3 Officers and 172 other ranks furnished for work on deepening and rivetting trenches, carrying parties and general repairs.	
CARENCY SECTOR	Nov. 27th		Fine day. Day quiet except for special operations at night. See attached appendix.	
-do-	Nov. 28th		Fair day. Foggy in morning. Combined trench-mortar and artillery bombardment about 11.30 am by enemy.	
-do-	Nov. 29th		Fine day. Desultory trench-mortar activity on part of enemy. Burying parties.	
BREGADE SUPPORT CARENCY SECTOR	Nov. 30th		Fair day. 14th Canadian Battalion relieved by 13th Canadian Battalion, relief completed at 12.30pm. 13th Canadian Battalion to Brigade Support, HOSPITAL CORNER. Battalion Headquarters at 17.c.l.l.	

*John W. Coumb*  
Major

Commanding  
14<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion  
Royal Montreal Regt.

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR

DIARY

NOVEMBER

1916.

APPENDICES 1 to 4.

FALSE DOCKET



Nov. 6th 1918

Time 3pm

IV/1

Situation. Our heavy trench mortars bombarded enemy Stokes Guns also taking part. Our field guns shelled enemy spasmodically during afternoon. Hardly any retaliation from enemy, except a small trench mortars. At present very quiet.  
Wind, moderate south westerly wind.

Nov. 7

Time 4.20pm

Situation quiet. Wind fresh S.S.W.

Time 10.40 pm

Everything quiet on our front. In early morning slight trench mortar and M.G. activity of both enemy and ours, our Field Guns shelled enemy rear area, shortly before 5 o'clock. W  
Wind S.S.W.

Nov 7

11.15 pm

Our Trench mortars and Stokes guns bombarded enemy from 2.30 to 3.45. No other activity, all quiet at present  
Wind S.S.W.

Nov. 8th

Q 12.45

Stokes fired about 200 rds. at 4pm  
Wind Fresh S.S.W.

Nov. 8th

4.20pm

All quiet at present at 1 o'clock trench mortars and Stokes combined along nearly whole front, enemy reply feeble, artillery practically nil.  
Wind S.S.W.

Nov. 9th

3.40 am

Situation, very quiet. Our artillery active at 1.00am  
Wind S.S.W.

Nov. 9th

2.25 pm

Heavy trench mortars, medium and stokes bombarding enemy who retaliated with a few minnies.  
Wind W.S.W.

Nov. 10th

4.20pm

Increase of rifle and machine gun fire on our part as suitable targets were afforded. No artillery or mortar activity.  
Wind. Very light, south, south east.

Nov. 10th

10.45 am

All quiet at present. No activity since morning except British aeroplane which has been up several hours

Nov.

SITUATION REPORTS.

Trench Tour November 18th to November 22nd 1916. 8

-----ooOoo-----

November 18th.....4.15 p.m.

Situation Report aaa All quiet aaa No artillery or machine gun activity.aaa A few rifle grenades on centre frontaaa  
Wind Light E.S.E.

November 19th.....4.20 a.m.

Situation very quiet aaa No artillery fire aaa A few bursts of machine gun fire throughout the night aaa  
Wind Strong S.W. withrain.

November 19th.....10.25 p.m.

Situation since last report very quiet aaa Just before dawn occasional short bursts of Machine Gun fire, no artillery activity aaa  
Wind S.S.E. Fresh.

November 19th.....4.25 p.m.

Situation aaa Spasmodic activity throughout day by both enemy's trench mortars and whizz-bangs, and by our trench mortars aaa No artillery activity with exception of a few rounds by our Field Guns this a.m.  
Wind S.S.W.

November 20th.....4.20 a.m.

Situation unchanged aaa Heavy stokes bombardment on our front at 4 a.m.aaa  
Wind fresh S.W.

November 20th.....10.40 a.m.

Situation since last report very quiet aaa Our artillery bombarded enemy on our left for 15 minutes but no retaliation aaa No rifle or Machine gun fire.

November 20th.....4.25 p.m.

Situation unchanged aaa Medium T.M. and stokes bombardment for one and half hours beginning at 2.00 p.m.aaa Enemy retaliated with a few minenwerfers and rifle grenades which did no damage aaa  
Wind S.W. light.

November 21st.....4.25 a.m.

SITUATION REPORT aaa At 11 p.m. one of our working parties was fired on by rifle and machine gun fire aaa The location of enemy garrison was observed and Field Artillery, Medium Trench mortars and Stokes Guns were freely used and proved very effective aaa No other activity except on part of our Machine Gunners and Snipers aaa  
Wind Very light South.

November 21st.....10.30 a.m.

Situation since last report aaa A little sniping by both sides no machine gun fire aaa Enemy sending a few minenwerfers on our left at present aaa  
Wind S.S.W.

November 21st.....4.20 p.m.

Situation since last report aaa During day sniping on both sides from about three p.m. aaa A few enemy minenwerfers have been sent over principally on our rightaaa Our stokes are replying and still firing now. Wind S.W. Misty

*file, inc*

14th. CANADIAN BATTALION,  
ROYAL MONTREAL REGIMENT

October 28th. 1916.

DISPOSITION REPORT.

Appendix IV/5

LOCATION	UNIT	Officers	O.R.	Machine Guns	Machine Gunnery	Bombers	Intel.	S&B.	Sigs.
WATSON LINE	No.1 Coy.	2	58	3	19	9		4	2
" "	No.2 Coy.	2	58	3	29	8		4	2
CABARET ROUGE	No.3 Coy.	3	59	3	19	11		4	2
" "	No.4 Coy.	2	58	3	19	10		4	2
X.28.b.8.6	Headquarters	5	<del>74</del>				17	5	9
TOTAL		14	277	12	76	38	17	21	17

TOTAL-ALL-RANKS. 470

## DISPOSITION REPORT.

14th Canadian Battalion, Royal Montreal Regiment.

November 4th, 1916.

UNIT	LOCATION.	OFFICERS	G.R.	GUNS	GUNNERS	SIGS.	MEDICAL	BOMBERS	TOTAL.
No. 1 Coy.	HARTING, left & right, ERSATZ CRATER, BROWN'S BURROW.	5	59	3	19	2	4	6	95
No. 2 Coy.	MANDORA NORTH.	4	62	2	12	2	3	17	100
No. 3 Coy.	MANDORA CENTRAL, SNARGATE.	5	45	2	13	2	4	0	69
No. 4 Coy.	MANDORA SOUTH, SNARGATE.	5	65	2	12	2	4	10	98
Intelligence	ZOUAVE VALLEY	1	17	-	-	-	-	-	18
Support Guns	ZOUAVE VALLEY	2	-	3	23	-	-	-	25
Headquarters.	ZOUAVE VALLEY near GRANBY.	7	36	-	-	8	4	-	55.
TOTAL		29	284	12	79	16	19	33	460.

Total all Ranks 460.

*Arthur [Signature]*  
Lieutenant and Adjutant,  
14th Canadian Battalion.



1. GARRISON AT DISPOSAL OF OFFICER COMMANDING LEFT SUB-SECTOR

1 Battalion of Infantry distributed as per attached Distribution Report.

1 Company of Support Battalion (approximately 70 O.R.) in ZOUAVE VALLEY

Approximately 250 O.R. of Tunnelling Company in ZOUAVE VALLEY, 50% would be working in saps.

2. Reference II para 1. sub-para (c)

The local counter-attack will be made by:-

(a) If it is a general attack on the whole of the front held by the Battalion, by the Company in support in ZOUAVE VALLEY, plus the personnel at Battalion Headquarters (approximately 35 O.R.)

(b) If a small attack or raid on the front held by any one Company, by the reserve personnel of the attacked Company reinforced by 50% of Reserve Company on either or both flanks, plus personnel at Battalion Headquarters.

Company Commanders will similarly co-operate with the Companies of other Battalions on their flanks, and will keep in constant touch with them.

3 ARTILLERY SUPPORT

- 106th Battery (18 pounders)
- 107th " "
- 1 Howitzer (4.5") Battery (4.5")
- 4 Stokes Guns.
- 4 Trench Mortars (light)
- 1 " " (heavy)

4. ACTION TO BE TAKEN IN CASE OF ATTACK, BY COMPANY COMMANDERS.

- (a) Send S.O.S. by telephone (or rocket)
- (b) Advise Battalion Headquarters by telephone and runners (two of whom will remain at Battalion Headquarters)
- (c) Advise Companies on both flanks.
- (d) Take other necessary steps as circumstances warrant.

5. ACTION OF TUNNELLING COMPANY IN ENEMY ATTACK.

- (a) The personnel will "stand to" in trench nearest sap they are working in, under command of the nearest Infantry Officer.
- (b) The miners who are ~~working~~ resting in ZOUAVE VALLEY will take up a position in SARGATE TRENCH between GRABBY and INTERNATIONAL.

6. GAS ATTACK - Details already issued.

7. HOSTILE MINE EXPLOSION - Details already issued.

8. HOSTILE MINOR ENTERPRISE OR CUTTING OUT EXPEDITION

Company Commanders should carefully consider, and have ready, plans to meet the possibility of a cutting out party, they should endeavour, by advancing from either flank, to, if possible, surround the enemy's party. Details will depend entirely upon action taken by the enemy, but good co-operation between Companies will be necessary, and all possible contingencies must be considered now.

*R. L. Clark*  
Lt. Col.

APPENDIX TO DEFENCE SCHEME - BERTHOVALE SECTOR.

11

1. GARRISON AT DISPOSAL OF OFFICER COMMANDING LEFT SUB-SECTOR

1 Battalion of Infantry distributed as per attached Distribution Report.

1 Company of Support Battalion (approximately 70 O.R.) in SOUAVE VALLEY

Approximately 250 O.R. of Tunnelling Company in SOUAVE VALLEY, 50% would be working in saps.

reference is made to para 1, sub-para (c)

The local counter-attack will be made by:-

(a) If it is a general attack on the whole of the front held by the Battalion, by the Company in support in SOUAVE VALLEY, plus the personnel at Battalion Headquarters (approximately 25 O.R.)

(b) If a small attack or raid on the front held by any one company, by the reserve personnel of the attacked company reinforced by 50% of reserve company on either or both flanks, plus personnel at Battalion Headquarters.

Company Commanders will similarly co-operate with the companies of other battalions on their flanks, and will keep in constant touch with them.

3. ARTILLERY SUPPORT

1. 106th Battery (15 pounders)

107th

1 Howitzer (~~15~~) Battery (4.5")

4 Stokes Guns.

4 French Mortars (light)

2 " " (heavy)

4. ACTION TO BE TAKEN IN CASE OF ATTACK, BY COMPANY COMMANDERS.

- Send O.C. by telephone (or rocket)
- Advise Battalion Headquarters by telephone and runners (two of whom will remain at Battalion Headquarters)
- Advise Companies on both flanks.
- Take other necessary steps as circumstances warrant.

5. ACTION OF TUNNELLING COMPANY IN CASE OF ATTACK.

- The personnel will "stand to" in trench nearest sap they are working in, under command of the nearest Infantry Officer.
- The miners who are ~~working~~ resting in SOUAVE VALLEY will take up a position in the trench between GRABBY and INTERNATIONAL.

6. JAS ATTACK - Details already issued.

7. STILE MINE EXPLOSION - Details already issued.

8. HOSTILE MINOR RETREAT OR CUTTING OUT EXPEDITION

Company Commanders should carefully consider, and have ready, plans to meet the possibility of a cutting out party, they should endeavour, by advancing from either flank, to, if possible, surround the enemy's party. Details will depend entirely upon action taken by the enemy, but good co-operation between Companies will be necessary, and all possible contingencies must be considered now.

*R. J. Clark*  
Lt. Col.

14 CANADIAN BATTALION  
ROYAL MONTREAL REGIMENT.

APPENDIX TO PAPER ON THE - BATTALION

I. BATTALION OF INFANTRY DISTRIBUTION

I Battalion of Infantry distributed as per attached Distribution Report.

I Company of Support Battalion (approximately 70 C.S.) in

BOUVAIS VALLEY approximately 20 C.S. of tunnelling company in BOUVAIS VALLEY, C.S. would be working in area.

Reference is made to I and II (a) and (b)

The local counter-attack will be made by:-

(a) It is a general attack on the whole of the front held by the Battalion, by the company in support in BOUVAIS VALLEY, plus the personnel at Battalion Headquarters (approximately 30 C.S.).

(b) It is a small attack or raid on the front held by any one company, by the reserve personnel of the attacking company reinforced by 50% of reserve company on either or both flanks, plus personnel at Battalion Headquarters.

Company commanders will strictly co-operate with the companies of other Battalions on their flanks, and will keep in constant touch with them.

II. BATTALION SUPPORT

(a) 10th battery (18 companies)

10th

10th battery (18 companies) (4.0)

10th battery (18 companies)

10th battery (18 companies)

10th battery (18 companies)

III. ACTION TO BE TAKEN IN CASE OF ATTACK BY COMPANY COMMANDERS

- (a) Send C.S. by telephone (or rocket)
- (b) Advise Battalion Headquarters by telephone and runners
- (c) Two of whom will report at Battalion Headquarters
- (d) Advise Companies on both flanks
- (e) Take other necessary steps as directed, unless warned.

IV. ACTION OF TUNNELLING COMPANY IN BATTLE

- (a) The personnel will "stand to" in trench nearest and they are working in, when ordered at the command Infantry Officer.
- (b) The mineers who are working in BOUVAIS VALLEY will take up a position in the trench between BATTERY and TUNNELLING COMPANY.

V. GAS ATTACK - Details already issued.

VI. HOSTILE MINE EXPLOSION - Details already issued.

VII. HOSTILE MINE EXPLOSION OR CUTTING OUT EXPLOSION

Company commanders should carefully consider, and have ready, plans to meet the possibility of a cutting out party, they should endeavour, by advancing from either flank, so, if possible, surround the enemy's party. Details will depend entirely upon the size of the enemy, but good co-operation between Companies will be necessary, and all possible contingencies must be considered now.

ROYAL CANADIAN MOUNTED POLICE  
NORTHWEST REGIMENT  
1941

Original

ROUTINE - 14TH CANADIAN BATTALION, ROYAL MONTREAL REGIMENT -  
FOR SUNDAY, NOVEMBER 12TH, 1916.

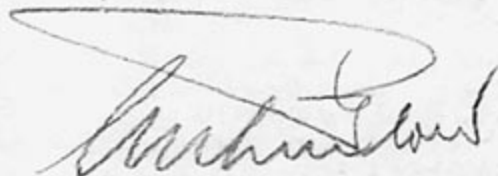
<u>PARTY.</u>	<u>DETAIL.</u>	<u>PERSONNEL.</u>	<u>PARADE AT ORDERLY ROOM.</u>	<u>INSTRUCTORS.</u>	<u>RATIONS.</u>	<u>DRESS.</u>	<u>REMARKS.</u>
"A"	Lewis gun course, MAISNIE BOUCHE	Lieutenant Bluskar, 30 Machine Gunners, 7 O.R. each Nos. 3, 4 Co. 8 O.R. Nos. 1, 2	7.30 a.m.	8 from Machine Gunners, Luscombe, Devine, Castle, Skinner, Bertram, Fenton, Healy, Magneisen.	Haversack	Light marching order, except those to be billeted (full marching order.)	Officer, batman. Instructors, to be billeted at school.
"B"	Grenade course, MAISNIE BOUCHE	Lieut. Owen and Richard, 1 Officer each Co., 25 Battalion Bombers, 18 O.R. No. 1 Co., 19 O.R. Nos. 2, 3, 4.	7.30 a.m.	-----	Haversack.	Light marching order.	----
"C"	Stokes gun course, MAISNIE BOUCHE	Lieut. O'Connor, 3 O.R. each Co.	7.30 a.m.	----	Haversack.	Light marching order.	----
"D"	Celt gun course, MAISNIE BOUCHE	-----	7.30 a.m.	1 from Machine Gunners, W.J. Smith	All.	Full marching order.	Will be billeted at school.
"E"	Wiring Course, GUOY SERVINS, 1st Field Co.	Lieut. Ashby, 3 O.R. each Nos. 3, 4 Co. 2 O.R. 1, 2 Co.	7.30 a.m.	----	All.	Full marching order.	Will be billeted at MAISNIE BOUCHE School.

PAGE 2 - ROUTINE.

"F"	Grenades	Every available	Battalion	Sgt. Wilson		
	Machine gun	Officer and	Parade		Rations-nil	Skeleton
	Map Reading	O. R.	Ground,	Lt. Beagley		order; <del>men</del>
	Scouting		VILLERS	Lt. McRae		without
	Wiring		CHATEL	Lt. Hodgson		rifles.
			Road,			
			8 a. m.	Sapper McLafferty		

---

Course "A" - all guns to be taken to School.  
 Quartermaster will have one field kitchen proceed to MAISMIL BOUCHE to prepare mid-day meal. All attendants at Courses there to turn in to kitchen their mid-day rations, meat, tea, etc., Sergeant Wright i/c kitchen.  
 All men inoculated this date will parade on party "F" where no physical exertion is required of them.  
 All bandsmen who arrived this date parade on party "F"



Lieutenant and Adjutant,  
 for O. C. 14th Canadian Battalion.

Routine - 14th Canadian Battalion, Royal Montreal Regiment -  
for Monday, November 13th, 1916.

PARTY.	DETAIL.	PERSONNEL.	PARADE.	RATIONS.	DRESS.	REMARKS.
"A"	Lewis gun course, MAISEL BOUCHE	Major Partridge, 30 Machine gunners. 7 C.R. #3,4 Co. 6 C.R. #1,2 Co.	7.30 a.m.	Haversack	Light marching order	Both gas helmets and goggles to be carried.
"B"	Grenade course, MAISEL BOUCHE	Lt. Owen and Richard, 1 Officer each Co. 25 Bombers, 18 C.R. #1 Co. 19 C.R. #2, 3,4 Co.	7.30 a.m.	Haversack	Light marching order	Both gas helmets and goggles to be carried.
"C"	Stokes gun course, MAISEL BOUCHE	Lt. O'Connor, 3 C.R. each Co.	7.30 a.m.	Haversack	Light marching order	Both gas helmets and goggles to be carried.
"D"	Fitting of improved gas helmets MAISEL BOUCHE	No. 1 Co. #2 Co. 3 Co. #4 Co. All Details	7.45 a.m. 8.15 a.m. 8.45 a.m. 9.15 a.m. 9.45 a.m.	----	Belt and side arms.	Both gas helmets and goggles to be carried. Each parade to be i/c an Officer, small parties a Senior N.C.O.
"E"	Lecture on Bombers in Defence by Major Brothers MAISEL BOUCHE at 10 a.m.	Every available Officer	-----	-----	-----	All Officers will meet Battalion Headquarters Officers at the School at 9.55 a.m.

Both Gas  
Helmets  
and  
Goggles

Page 2 - Routine.

A,B,C - Attendants on these parties will be fitted with new gas devices under arrangements made by the Commandant of the School at HAIRHILL BOUGHS. The same officers and O.N. will attend these courses as attended Sunday, November 12th. Quartermaster will arrange for one field kitchen and one water cart to proceed with these parties. Rations to be turned in to cooks on kitchen. Cook Sergeant Wright in charge meal.

D - Every available man outside of A,B,C MUST attend these parades. Machine gunners parade with their Tower Respirators and sponge goggles also.

E - All officers must receive the improved gas helmets either before or after this lecture.

All parades are in front of orderly room.

Certificate to be submitted to Adjutant by 6 p. m. November 13th as to how many individuals are as yet unfitted with new helmet, if any.

Lieutenant.  
Adjutant. 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

14th Canadian Battalion, Royal Montreal Regiment  
for Tuesday, November 14th 1916.

PARTY	DETAIL	PERSONNEL	PARADE	NOTICE	DRESS	REMARKS.	
"A"	Lewis Gun Course MAISEL BOUCHE	Major Partridge 30 Machine Gunners 7 M.C.C. 3, 4 Co. 8 M.C.C. 1, 2 Co.	7.30 a.m.	Haversack	Light Marching order	Old gas helmet and goggles to be carried	"A"
"B"	Grenade Course MAISEL BOUCHE	Lt. Wm. and Richard, 1 officer each Co. 25 Bombers 15 M.C.C. 1 Co. 19 M.C.C. 2 Co. 3, 4 Co.	7.30 a.m.	Haversack	Light Marching Order	Old gas helmet and goggles to be carried	"B"
"C"	Stokes Gun Course MAISEL BOUCHE	Lt. C. Canner. 3 M.C.C. each Co.	7.30 a.m.	Haversack	Light Marching Order	Old gas helmet and goggles to be carried	"C"
"D"	General Instruction on Battalion Parade Ground VILLIERS CHATEL ROAD.	Every available officer and M.C.C.	8.00 a.m.	----	Light Marching Order	Old gas helmet and goggles to be carried	"D"
"E"	Fitting of Improved Gas Helms MAISEL BOUCHE	All officers to arrive at school at 12 noon on parade today.			Light Marching Order	Old gas helmet and goggles to be carried. An officer or M.C.C. to be in charge of each party.	"E"

14th Canadian Battalion



3\VI xibna

PARTY	DETAIL	PERSONNEL	PARADE	RATIONS	DRESS	REMARKS
<del>Bathing</del> <del>Parade</del> <del>...</del>	<del>...</del>	<del>...</del>	<del>...</del>	<del>...</del>	<del>...</del>	<del>...</del>
"P"	Bathing parade Guoy Servins in parade	No 1&2 Coys 3&4 Coys All details	1 p.m. 2 p.m. 4 p.m.	-----	Belt & side Arms	Towels and Soap to be taken. An officer or N.C.O. to be in charge of parade
"Q"	Lecture to Officers by Brig. Gen. G.S. Tuxford. MAISHIL BOUCHE 3 p.m.	Every avail able Officer	Fall in at Orderly Room 2 p.m.	-----	-----	Note BOOK and pencils to be carried.
"H"	Lecture by Major Villiers Battalion Head quarters Mess	Every Officer in the Battalion	7.15 p.m.	-----	-----	-----
"A" "B" "C"	Parade in front of Orderly Room. The same pupils to attend these courses as formerly. One field kitchen and one water cart to proceed under quartersmaster arrangements as usual.					
"E"	This is the last opportunity of receiving the new Gas Helmet and Unit Commanders must take personal steps to see that their command is completely fitted with same.					

Lieut and Adjt.,  
14th Canadian Battalion.

November 15th, 1916.

17

Appendix IV/9

O.C. ALL UNITS.

*original*

An Inspection of the Battalion will be held by the Officer Commanding on the Battalion Parade Ground at 10 a.m. tomorrow. Unit Commanders will hold their own inspection on the same ground at 9 a.m. Every man, batmen, sanitary men, runners &c must be on parade. All Stretcher Bearers will parade as a Unit.

*Evans*

DRESS. Light marching order, no overcoats, both old and new Gas Helmets to be worn. All clothing, equipment ammunition, &c must be scrupulously clean.

Orderly Room will be held at 11 a.m tomorrow in the Adjutant's Office.

Lieutenant and Adjutant,  
14th Canadian Battalion.

*Original.*

*Original.*

An Inspection of the Battalion will be held by the Officer Commanding on the Battalion Parade Ground at 10 a.m. tomorrow. Unit Commanders will hold their own inspection on the same ground at 9 a.m. Every man, batman, auxiliary man, runner & mess boy must be on parade. All stretcher bearers will parade as a Unit.

DRESS. Light marching order, no overcoats, both old and new Gas Helmets to be worn. All clothing, equipment & ammunition, to be as exceptionally clean.

Orderly Room will be held at 11 a.m. tomorrow in the Adjutant's Office.

Lieutenant and Adjutant  
14th Canadian Battalion.



Copy No.....

~~OPERATION~~ ORDER No. 102.

SECRET.

18

by  
Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

II/1

-----ooOoo-----

In the Field,  
November 2nd, 1916

Reference Map, VIMY - CARENCOY,  
1/10,000.

- Information. 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will relieve the  
13th CANADIAN BATTALION in the LEFT SUB-SECTOR  
on Friday November 3rd, 1916.
- Movement. 2. Reliefs will be carried out according to  
attached table.
- Traffic. 3. Control of Traffic will be under the direction  
of the Picquets of the 13th, 15th, and 16th, BATTALIONS
- Precautionary Measures. 4. During the progress of relief, no smoking,  
stamping of feet, loud talking, or any unnecessary  
noise is to be made.
- Maps. 5. All Defence Schemes, Maps, Plans, etc., will be  
handed over by the Unit relieved.
- Sanitation. 6. Positions at present occupied by units of the  
14th BATTALION, must be left scrupulously clean  
and certificates obtained to that effect, and sent  
to BATTALION HEADQUARTERS.
- Trench Stores. 7. Receipts to be obtained from the 13th BATTALION  
for trench stores handed over in present positions.  
Copies of receipts given to the 13th BATTALION  
units for trench Stores in left sub-sector to be  
sent to BATTALION HEADQUARTERS.
- Baggage. 8. Any effects to be returned to Transport, to be  
sent to present BATTALION HEADQUARTERS, not later  
than 11.30 a.m.
- Machine Guns. 9. Colt Machine Gun Teams will proceed independently  
to their positions.
- Reports. 10. Accurate Disposition Reports to be rendered to  
Headquarters by RUNNER as soon as possible after  
arrival in trenches.

11. ACKNOWLEDGE.

*[Signature]*  
Lieutenant,  
Adjutant, for C.C. 14th Canadian Bn.

Issued at.....by Orderly.

Copy No. 1 to No. 1 Company.

- " 2 " " "
- " 3 " " "
- " 4 " " "
- " 5 " Regtl. Sergt. Major and Headquarters Details.
- " 6 " Machine Gun Officer.
- " 7 " Intelligence Officer.
- " 8 " Bombers.
- " 9 " Transport Officer and Quartermaster.
- " 10 " Orderly Room.
- " 11 " 3rd Can. Inf Bde.
- " 12 " Adjutant.
- " 13 " 13th Canadian Battalion.
- " 14 " War Diary.
- " 15 " " "

by  
Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark, M.C.  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

-----oo00oo-----

In the Field,  
November 21st 1916.

- Relief. 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will be relieved by the 13th CANADIAN BATTALION on the morning November 22nd, 1916
- Billets. 2. Platoons will move independently via ERSATZ and CABARET ROAD to VILLERS-AU-BOIS (Brigade Reserve.)
- Billeting. 3. The entire Intelligence Section in charge of Sergeant Jackson will meet Captain G.E. LEIGHTON, billeting Officer, at the entrance to VILLERS-AU-BOIS on CARENCEY ROAD at 9 am. After Billets have been arranged, Intelligence Section will meet the different Units at this point and guide them to their Billets.
- Maps. 4. All Defence Schemes, Maps, Plans, etc., will be handed over to the relieving Unit and receipts obtained.
- Code. 5. Completion of Reliefs will be notified to BATTALION HEADQUARTERS by verbal phone message "SEAFORTH".
- Meals. 6. The Quartermaster will have Field Kitchens serve a hot meal upon arrival at Billets.
- Guides. 7. One guide from each platoon and one from each other Detail will "Fall In" at Orderly Room at 8.45 a.m. sharp in charge of Lieutenant J. L. STEPHENSON.  
Relieving Units will occupy positions in the trenches from right to left similar to ours - 1, 2, and 3 Companies in the front line and No. 4 Company in Support.
- Baggage. 8. Two Limbers will meet Units on BEAVER ROAD 200 yards from Hospital Corner at 11 a.m. and one limber at 2 pm. to collect any baggage being carried out. Any baggage too heavy to carry to this point may be left at SOUCHEZ DUMP under units' own care, and will be collected by limber at dusk.
- Trench Stores. 9. Receipts for Trench Stores and good sanitary condition of trenches must be turned into Orderly Room by 8 p.m. tomorrow. All periscopes, rubber boots and very pistols must be taken out.
- Precautionary Measures. 10. No smoking, stamping of feet or loud talking will be permitted during the progress of relief and Unit Commanders will take precautions to reduce the possibility of casualties.
- Reports. 11. Unit Commanders will report, not necessarily in person, to Orderly Room at VILLERS-AU-BOIS with details of stragglers, casualties, etc.

*[Handwritten Signature]*

Lieutenant and Adjutant,  
for O.C. 14th Canada Battalion.

Issued at	.....	by Orderly.	Copy No. 10 to	Bombing Offr.
Copy No. 1	to No. 1	Company.	Copy No. 11	" Int. Officer.
" " 2	" " 2	"	" " 12	" Adjutant.
" " 3	" " 3	"	" " 13	" War Diary.
" " 4	" " 4	"	" " 14	"
" " 5	R. S. M. and Headquarters Details.			
" " 6	3rd Can. Inf. Bde.			
" " 7	Orderly Room.			
" " 8	13th Can. Battalion.			
" " 9	Machine Gun Officer.			

Secret

OPERATIONS/Orders No 107

Copy No 79

II/3

by  
Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark, M.C.,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment.

In the field  
November 29th 1916.

Relief

1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will be relieved by the 15th CANADIAN BATTALION on the morning of November 30th

Movement

2. The Battalion on relief will proceed independently to new positions in support as follows:-

- No 1 Company and Bombers- CAMBRET ROUGE
- No 3 Company - AMELAIN ST NAZAIRE
- No 2 and 4 Companies - CARENCEY
- Headquarters and all other details - DALYS. near Hospital Corner

Intelligence Officer will detail one scout per Company and one for Bombers to report to Commanders of these Units at 9.30 a.m. and guide them to their positions.

Precautionary Measures

3. The utmost care must be taken not only while the relief was in progress but on the march to the new positions to reduce the possibility of casualties.

Reinforcements for 13th Batt.

4. No 1 Company will detail 50 G.R. under 1 Officer to remain behind and come under the command of the OC 13th Battalion

Guides

5. Guides, 1 for each platoon and Detail will fall in at Orderly Room at 8 a.m. sharp to guide reliefs to their positions. Lieut Blesser will be in charge of Guides

Maps.

6. All maps, defence schemes etc will be handed over to the relieving unit and receipts obtained

Trench Stores & Sanitation

7. Trenches must be left clean and receipts obtained as well as receipt for trench stores. Very pistols, Rubber Boots and periscopes will be taken out of trenches.

Garrison

8. No one is permitted to leave the trenches before relief without special permission from Battalion Headquarters.

Code

9. Completion of relief to be notified to Battalion Headquarters by code word "SQUARE".

Reports

10. Upon arrival at new positions Unit Commanders will render to Orderly Room an accurate disposition report, and also as soon as possible a list of the killed, wounded and missing for the present tour in order to verify Office records.

*Robert Clark*  
Lieut and adjt.,  
For O.C. 14th Canadian Battalion.

10:15 pm

Issued at	.....	by	Orderly
Copy No 1	to	No 1	Company
" 2	"	" 2	"
" 3	"	" 3	"
" 4	"	" 4	"
" 5		Details	
" 6		Regimental Sergeant Major	
" 7		13th Canadian Battalion	
" 8		3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade.	
" 9		War Diary	
" 10		"	

SECRET.

SPECIAL OPERATION ORDER  
BY  
LIEUT COLONEL R.P. CLARK, M.C.,  
COMMANDING 14TH CANADIAN BATTALION.  
-----

21  
II/4

Reference Map  
Sheet attached.

- OPERATION. 1. On the 27th November, and at an hour to be notified later, the 176th TUNNELLING COMPANY will fire a mine.
- CONSOLIDATION. 2. The 14TH CANADIAN BATTALION, ROYAL MONTREAL REGIMENT, will consolidate the near lip.
- SUPPORTS. 3. The 13TH CANADIAN BATTALION, ROYAL HIGHLANDERS OF CANADA, will, on relief by the 14TH BATTALION on 26th November, place 1 Company, approximately 150 all ranks, at the disposal of the O.C. 14TH BATTALION, as a Battalion reserve.
- PERSONNEL 4. The consolidation party will be in charge of MAJOR A.T. POWELL, and will be divided as follows:-
- Party for B.1. under LIEUT. E. COWEN.  
Post 1 - 1 N.C.O. 4 O.R. 2 Bombers  
1 Stretcher Bearer 1 Runner  
3 Lewis Gunners.
- Post 2 - similar strength as Post 1.
- Party for B.2. and B.3. under LIEUT D.M. McRAE  
B.2. - 1 N.C.O. 4 O.R. 2 Bombers  
1 Stretcher Bearer 1 Runner
- B.3. - 1 N.C.O. 4 O.R. 2 Bombers  
1 Stretcher Bearer 1 Runner  
3 Lewis Gunners
- Reinforcing parties of similar strength will be held in reserve about junction of (A) HEATON and GORRON, and (B) HEATON and TANGHOT.
- ACTION TO BE TAKEN 5. On the mine being exploded parties for B.1., B.2. and B.3. will advance as rapidly as possible to the objectives (approximate) and take up their positions there. (see map)
- ENGINEERS 6. The Officers in charge will cite posts and communication trenches and advise C.E. Officer Lieut JESSETT of the exact location of same (vide para 10)
- ENGINEERS SUPERVISION 7. Parties to work under 1st Field Company, C.E., will be provided as required.
- RELIEF OF PERSONNEL IN OPERATION 8. On completion of consolidation, the Post Garrison will be relieved from the reinforcing parties.



- 22
- EQUIPMENT** 9. Each O.R. will carry light marching order (with 120 rounds S.A.A.) one extra bandolier (50 rounds S.A.A.) 4 Mills Grenades, 12 sandbags and 1 shovel.
- DUMPS.** 10. Location - B 1 at GOBRON and HEATON.  
B 2 and B 3 at TANCHOT and HEATON.
- Each to contain 3 boxes S.A.A. 1 Box white Very lights, 1 Box Green Very Lights, 10 boxes Mills Grenades, 50 yards screen canvas, 100 yards White Tape (wide) to mark trenches etc.  
Dumps to be marked (B 1) and (B 2 and B 3)
- PRECAUTIONARY MEASURES** 11. On warning being given, all ranks must clear the area bounded by UHLAN-KING-GOBRON and CHALK to half way between TANCHOT and UHLAN or continuation of same.  
Company Commanders must personally see that this is done and advise Battalion Headquarters in writing.  
After debris has fallen, positions will be at once re-occupied.  
All ranks must be warned to clear dugouts for explosion and to take shelter from falling debris immediately after.
- SIGNALS** 12. After explosion, all available signallers must at once test ALL LINES and if necessary, repair.
- SYNCHRONIZATION OF WATCHES** 13. All watches to be synchronised at 12 NOON, 3 p.m. and 5 p.m.
- MEDICAL ARRANGEMENTS** 14. Medical Aid Post west of SOUCHEZ ALLEY off COBURG (present location) vide para 4.
- FLANK WIRING PARTIES** 15. Two wiring parties under CAPTAIN D. WORRALL will advance on the flanks simultaneously with the consolidating parties and will proceed to wire flanks. Dumps for wiring material same as para (10)
- ADVANCED BATTALION HEADQUARTERS** 16. Advanced Battalion Headquarters and MAJOR A.T. POWELL'S Headquarters at junction of TANCHOT and HEATON.
- ACTION IF MINE DOES NOT EXPLODE** 17. If the mine does not explode and after a consultation with the Tunnelling Officer, the original posts will be remained as at present
- LIASON OFFICER** 18. Liason Officer will be exchanged with Battalion on Right Flank.
- EMERGENCY PARTIES.** 19. A Party of 1 Officer and 50 O.R. of the 13TH BATTALION will be detailed as a reserve and to be ready as a part or as a whole to deal with any emergency.
20. ACKNOWLEDGE.

Issued at..... by orderly  
 Copy No 1 to 1st Can Div.  
 No 2 to 3rd Can Inf Bde.  
 No 3 to Major A.T. Powell  
 No 4 to 1st Field Coy.  
 No 5 to Fyles  
 No 6 to O.C. 14th Can. Batt.  
 No 7 to War Diary  
 No 8 to War Diary.

*[Signature]*  
 Lieut and Adjt.,  
 For O.C.,  
 14th Canadian Battalion.



MEMORANDUMS BY LIEUT. COL. R.P. CLARK, M.C.  
 COMMANDING 14TH CANADIAN BATTALION,  
ROYAL MONTREAL REGIMENT.

V/1

- SUBJECT. Contingencies to be provided for in connection with the occupation of a mine crater.
- 
- CONSOLIDATION. Near lip of crater to be consolidated with the greatest possible speed.
- OFFICERS I/C. Officer i/c - Major A. T. Powell.  
 Right party - Lieut. E. Cowen.  
 Centre party - Lieut. D. W. Clarkson.  
 Left party - Lieut. D. M. McRae.
- Reserve parties -  
 Right - Lieut. G. A. McLellan.  
 Centre - Lieut. J. P. O'Connor.  
 Left - Lieut. C. F. Falkenberg.
- MEDICAL. 1 Stretcher Bearer with each party.  
 1 Stretcher with 2 carriers as close as possible to each of the right, centre and left parties.  
 Regimental Aid Post to remain in present location.
- COMMUNICATIONS. A sufficient supply of S.O.S. Rockets and Very lights.  
 Telephone lines to all Company Headquarters, Major Powell's Advanced Headquarters, Stokes Gun, Medium Trench Mortars, Artillery, Brigade Headquarters, Battalions on each flank.  
 2 runners to each of right, centre and left parties to remain as close as possible.  
 4 runners to remain with Major Powell.  
 Lieut. J.L. Stevenson to act as Adjutant to Major Powell.  
 All runners to wear distinguishing marks and to have absolute "right of way" over all traffic.
- TRENCH ARTILLERY CO-OPERATION. 6 Stokes guns.  
 4 Medium Trench Mortars.  
 1 Heavy Trench Mortar.  
 7 Rifle Grenade Stands.  
 Rifle grenades to be used principally on flanks.
- ARTILLERY. 2 Batteries (12) guns 18 pounders  
 1 Battery (-4) guns 4.5.  
 Artillery to engage enemy batteries and minenwerfer.  
 F. O. O. to be in a suitable position, probably Ersatz Crater, with telephone and runners.

BRIGADE  
MACHINE  
GUNS.

To maintain a heavy barrage behind enemy lines and to each flank, combined with general searching of the enemy's territory. To open fire when the mine is blown and NOT BEFORE.

RUM AND WATER.  
EMERGENCY RATIONS.  
ORDINARY RATIONS.

A reserve issue of 1 issue per man to be held at Battalion Headquarters. Filled water bottles to be carried by all ranks. Emergency rations and 24 hours rations to be carried by all ranks.

ZERO HOUR.

Hour suggested for blow-up is 4.30. p. m. Monday next.

DISTINGUISHING MARKS. All runners to wear readily recognizable distinguishing marks and every member of the Battalion, and the support Battalion, must be made acquainted with same, and give "right-of-way" to runners, in order that urgent messages may not be delayed.

MEN'S WEB VALISES.

No Web equipment packs are to be taken into the trenches the next tour. Light marching order, overcoat, leather jerkin, blanket worn in banderole fashion.

AER-O-PLANE  
OBSERVATION.

None whatever on day of operation. Early on following morning, a reconnaissance to be made over crater and enemy back country. 14th Battalion to be properly supplied with ground flares, etc., to assist aer-o-plane, if necessary.

DUMPS AND  
MATERIAL.

Position of dumps - No. 1. HARTUNG.  
No. 2. GOERON.  
No. 3. TANCHOT.

Position of wire No. 4. Just below No. 1.  
dumps - No. 5. Just below No. 3.

Nos. 1, 2, 3 Dumps, will each contain 25 shovels, 500 sandbags, 10 coils French wire, 2 boxes-S.A.A., 10 boxes Mills grenades, 9 screw stakes, 18 short stakes, 10 coils barbed wire, 6 picks, revetting material and timber, green canvas, (to place 10 ft. to left of each proposed C.T.) white tape (very broad) to define positions of dumps from present front line and probably define routes to crater, 1 French dug-out, bath-mats, wire cutters, wire-workers gloves, rockets and flares, 6 .. gallons fresh water.

Nos. 4 and 5 Dumps will each contain 8 coils French wire, 14 large screw stakes, 28 short stakes, 10 coils barbed wire.

## EQUIPMENT.

Each man in the Battalion will wear one bandolier (50 rounds) and have in his Web equipment 120 rounds, total 170 rounds. 4 ~~xxxxxx~~ Mills-grenades will be taken into the Trenches by each N. C. O. and man the next tour

## PARTIES.

The following working, consolidating, storming, etc., parties are to be detailed at once,-

Right storming party,-	Lieut. E. Cowen. 3 Sappers. 1 N. C. O. 8 men.
Centre storming party,-	Lieut. D. W. Clarkson. 3 Sappers. 1 N. C. O. 10 men.
Left storming party,-	Lieut. D. M. MCRAE. 3 Sappers. 1 N. C. O. 8 men.

The right and left storming parties to also have 1 Lewis gun each with them, acting under orders of Battalion Lewis gun Officer, as far as choosing of numbers and personnel is concerned. Each of the 3 parties is to contain 2 experienced bombers, included in above numbers, who will carry no rifles, but carry 25 bombs each. Every O. R. outside of Bombers and Stretcher Bearers, will carry 1 shovel, 12 sandbags, 6 bombs. 1 Battalion Stretcher Bearer to be sent out with each party.

A reserve party of the same strength, will be in a nearby place, for each of the above parties, governed by the same equipment conditions, and commanded as below mentioned,-

Right reserve Storming party,-	Lieut. G. A. McLellan.
Centre reserve storming party,-	Lieut. J. P. O'Connor.
Left reserve storming party,-	Lieut. C. F. Falkenberg.

The two following wiring parties will be detailed,-

Right flank wiring party,-	1 N. C. O. 6 men.
Left flank wiring party,-	1 N. C. O. 6 men.

Each of these parties will have reinforcements of 3 men close at hand, one of the 3 a senior soldier. These wiring parties will connect the crater to front line by as much wire as possible.

The following "digging" parties, -

Right, centre, and left, Communication Trenches to be dug, zig-zag fashion, to crater, from our present front line,

Each, - 1 Sapper.  
1 N. C. O.  
10 men.

Officer i/c above 3 parties - Lieut. J.W. Maynard.

The following carrying parties, -

3 parties of 1 N. C. O. and 8 men each.

**SUPPORTING TROOPS.**

One Company of Brigade Support Battalion to move forward from present position and take up a position in Souchez Alley.

One Company of Brigade Support Battalion to take up a position in GLENCOURSE ROAD.

**RESERVE TROOPS.**

The Brigade Reserve Battalion will not take any action unless called upon for assistance of some nature.

*R. P. Clark*  
*20.11.18*

Headquarters,  
14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment,  
November 28th 1916.

From:- Officer Commanding,  
14th Canadian Battalion,

To:- General Officer Commanding,  
3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade.

REFERENCE CONSOLIDATION OF MINE CRATER,  
RIGHT-SUBSECTOR, CARENCEY SECTION, ON NOVEMBER 27TH, 1916.

I have the honour to report as follows:-

At Zero hour, 9.50 p.m. both of the mines  
exploded, two distinct quakes being felt.

Reference to the general progress, of this  
minor operation, I refer you to the attached report of  
MAJOR A.T.POWELL, which fully covers the whole ground.

Many of the casualties caused, were stated  
to be due to our own artillery firing short, and I think  
that in future operations of a similar nature, it should be  
borne in mind that artillery should only fire on the flanks,  
or fire well to the front of the positions and objectives,  
where our men are working, paying special attention to  
counter battery and trench mortar fire.

I am confident that our garrison, with the  
assistance of the machine and Stokes guns, could have driven  
back any hostile attack, even of greater strength than the  
three which they did defeat.

After personal investigation of the new sites  
on our right front, I consider that all of our objectives  
have been gained, and in addition a commanding view of the  
inside of the crater obtained.

I wish to bring especially to your notice  
the good services of LIEUT E. COWEN, CAPTAIN D.WORRALL,  
LIEUT D.M.McRAE, and the Officer in direct charge of the  
operations, MAJOR A.T.POWELL.

The assistance given us, by the whole of the  
Canadian Engineers personnel, under LIEUT H.C.HARVEY was  
splendid; Lieut JEMMETT having become a casualty before the  
Zero hour.

The liaison duties with the 162nd TUNNELLING  
COMPANY and the 8TH CANADIAN BATTALION were very good and  
left nothing to be desired.

The assistance given us by the 150 rifles  
of the 13th CANADIAN BATTALION under Captain J.J.JEFFERY,  
was excellent.

The whole respectfully submitted.

Lieut Colonel,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion.

Headquarters,  
14th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Montreal Regiment,  
November 28th, 1916.

From Major A. T. Powell

TO

Officer Commanding,  
14th Canadian Battalion.

Sir, -

I have the honour to report on the operations of November 27th, 1916, on the occupation of a mine crater on the right flank of the right sub-sector, CARENCY SECTION.

The size of the crater is roughly 220 feet on its long axis, 180 feet on its short axis, by 60 feet deep.

The above figures and the relative positions of the four objective posts are shown on the accompanying sketch. KING STREET, from TANCHOT to GOBRON STREET, are passible and capable of reliefs being carried out by day.

A conservative estimate of the enemy casualties, not including those destroyed by the mine, is 50 killed and wounded, including 1 Officer and 5 O. R. killed, and 2 prisoners.

Our casualties are approximately 5 O.R. killed and 33 wounded.

Identifications were secured, and all of the objectives were gained and we occupy the four desired posts commanding the crater.

I have the honour to be, Sir,  
your obedient servant,

MAJOR.



From:- Major A.T. Powell,  
14th Canadian Battalion, (R.M.R.)

To:- Lieut Colonel R.P. Clark, M.C.,  
Officer Commanding,  
14th Canadian Battalion, (R.M.R.)

Sir,

I have the honour to submit herewith, my report on the operations carried out by this Battalion on the night of November 27/28, 1916.

**Preliminary**

1. On the morning of the 25th instant, the writer was placed in charge of a party to consolidate the near lip of a crater to be developed by the explosion of a mine S. of the River -----.

He was given the ideas of the General Officer Commanding, 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade, and Officer Commanding, 14th Canadian Battalion, Royal Montreal Regiment, as outlined on the attached sketch (Exhibit A) and a free hand in the selection of his Officers and various consolidation parties, the strength of which was given in Battalion Special Operation Orders.

These parties were segregated in billets near VILLERS-AU-BOIS for one day, where the exact lay-out of the trenches concerned, and the general idea of the supposed crater as it would appear, were graphically described, in actual size, to the various parties, by the laying out of tapes on the ground. There the parties were schooled, as best the time would permit, in both their duties in action, the advantages of the objective to be aimed at, actual distances and directions thereof by night and by day of the probable destination of each party and the idea of fighting their newly gained positions.

**Objective**

2. The objective of the Battalion operation was to site 4 posts and consolidate them, two on the near lip of Twin Crater, approximately the old B.2. and B.3. sap-heads, and two on the near lip of the new crater in advance of the old Sap head B.1.; also to connect the same four posts to our original front line by C.Ts and obtain a condition before morning which would render all saps, New C.Ts, and old system of trenches passable by day.

**Operations**

3. A Zero time had been arranged, as the signal for the explosion of the mine, and the simultaneous co-operation of our trench, field and heavier artillery. All watches had been synchronized and at the appointed time the operation commenced as intended, to a few seconds.

When the debris had fallen, and this as a matter of fact amounted to nothing, the four consolidating parties advanced, followed by the sap, and trench clearing parties as detailed by the C.E. Officers.

One minute after the explosion, 1st signs of enemy distress were shown by the sending up of a extremely bright, white, whirling flares, resembling catherine wheels from the supports immediately in rear of the mine.

## Operations

*In 8 minutes after the explosion, the enemy artillery barrage came into operation chiefly light saps & trench mortars, 1 battery of TMs. and 2 minenwerfers, with an A.S. howitzer shell occasionally*

At about three minutes after the explosion, red Very Lights were sent up from the same locality. The first arm of the enemy in action against us was one of the two Minenwerfers very soon after the explosion followed by the lights and barrage as above.

It should also be mentioned that a number of fish-tailed bombs landing in the vicinity of our front line preceded their barrage.

The enemy artillery was practically silent in 50 minutes after the explosion, having slackened appreciably about 20 minutes previously.

The two left consolidating parties reached their respective siting positions in about 8-10 minutes after the explosion, only to find that all had been left practically normal, so that instead of consolidation, the parties set about improving and clearing the saps and trenches.

The right two parties had sited their two T-head positions and in ten minutes after the explosion, the same two parties were immediately set to work. The sites were admirably chosen; the left T-head commanding both the Twin Crater and most of the new crater; and the right T-head commands a sweep of almost 180 degrees to the right (swung from a line joining the wall between the two craters and the T-head)

This sweep the writer feels, covers the Ersatz Crater. During the next 20-30 minutes, all parties including the trench clearing parties continued to work but suffered severe casualties from enemy fire (trench artillery and Field Gun shrapnel). It seems quite probable that our own shells caused casualties in KING STREET, between Saps (B.1 and B.2) and also (B.5 and B.7)

As soon as the enemy artillery had subsided, a bombing post was pushed forward into the enemy old front line, from our right T-head as a covering party.

Between 11 and 11.30 p.m. the Bombing Post was driven in by an Enemy party of about a 100 which advanced over the open from their support-trench to within 40 yards of our right T-head. The enemy were bombed, and also Machine Gun and Rifle fire were directed upon them. They were dispersed in disorder retreating towards their Support Lines. Lieut COWEN states that they had undoubtedly many casualties by the evidence of bodies lying about and cries of distress. Up to this time one badly wounded and one shaken prisoner had been taken.

Our Bombing Posts were again put out in double the original strength and in about half an hour, a 2nd enemy party of about 9 O.R. advanced upon our right T-head. They were driven back by the Bombers without having molested our parties at work.

About one hour later a 3rd Enemy party of considerably larger numbers advanced upon our same Bombing Posts. This party was bombed by our Bombers and one of our patrols which had been sent out in the meantime. The above personnel took cover in the crater while two Machine Guns in our right T-head drove them back.

Shortly after this 3 lines of French Wire were staked and pinned and strung from the South lip of the crater outside our Right T-head to HARTING STREET, paralleling GOBRON STREET, and roughly 20 feet from it.

From this time on, the Enemy showed signs of trying to consolidate his position along his rear lip of the new crater, sending out in advance of his parties, snipers and flare throwers

At about 4.30 a.m. a small party was dispersed by our Machine Gun fire from on top of the commanding knoll near the far lip of the crater. Part of the same party appeared again in the same place a few minutes later and were a second time similarly dispersed.

By 5.00 a.m. all working parties had been dismissed having made all front line and Communication Trenches passable by day; and by 6.00 a.m. the consolidating parties were relieved by a permanent garrison of the Company occupying that area. The foregoing was determined after satisfactory inspection by the writer.

Throughout the whole of the enemy counter movements, they lacked energy and were easily repulsed. At morning "Stand to" the enemy was uncannily quiet.

## Prisoners

4. Two. One badly wounded, and the other apparently very much shaken.

## Supports

5. The writer takes great pleasure in asking the Commanding Officer to thank our supporting detachment under Captain JEFFRIES for their whole-hearted co-operation. It is also pleasing to note that this detachment suffered no casualties save one minor scratch

## Casualties

6. (a) Enemy - approximately 75, exclusive of casualties caused by actual explosion

(b) Our own - 11 killed and 28 wounded - Total 39

## Lessons to be learned

7. The writer respectfully submits the following lessons to be learned for your approval:-

(a) A strong offensive patrol preceding the consolidating parties should collect a fund of valuable information between the time of the explosion and first counter effort of the enemy.

(b) Parties for clearing should be kept under cover until enemy barrage slackens to avoid early congestion and unnecessary casualties if possible.

## Engineers

8. The writer begs to have you thank the Officer Commanding, 1st Field Company, Canadian Engineers, for their invaluable co-operation. Firstly in the distribution and strength of working parties; the bringing up of well gauged quantities of all necessary material and supplies; Secondly, the untiring energy of Lieut J.M. JENNETT who was unfortunately wounded; and thirdly the gallant and efficient work of Lieut HARRYET who replaced Lieut JENNETT and assisted Lieut COWEN throughout the operation.

## Recommendations

9. The writer begs to respectfully bring to your notice the following recommendations:-

(a) Lieut COWEN E. who proved himself so gallant and such a master of his undertaking to consolidate the 2 right posts, at the same time entering the enemy lines and obtaining two prisoners as well as valuable identifications.

(b) No 26097 Pte JONES G.R. and No 451912 Pte PINGFORD E.F. who delivered messages under heavy fire from Lieuts COWEN and MC-RAE respectively, arriving at my headquarters exhausted from having been repeatedly knocked down by shell fire in the course of their errands.

(c) Sergt Free, Canadian Engineers, who at my command organized a party to replace one that had become dispersed, led it through the enemy barrage and reclaimed the trench between Saps B.2 and B.3 also supervising very thoroughly all front line reclamation

- (d) No 437400 Corporal MAGNEISON J.A. for his able handling and disposition of his Lewis Gun and crew in protecting parties in our right T-head and communication trenches.
- (e) No 63055 Pte ALLARD W. for his splendid work as a Bomber on our right flank.
- (f) The untiring support of Captain D.WORRALL as my principal assistant.
- (g) The dutiful conduct of all other Officers associated with the writer in conducting the above mentioned enterprise.

I have the honour to be Sir,

Your obedient servant,

Major.



INTELLIGENCE REPORT.

Nov 19.-20th.

GENERAL INFORMATION.

Our Operations. - Artillery - Our 18 pndrs. fired 6 rounds into enemy's front line. Time 2.45 p.m.  
Machine Guns. Our M.Gs. fired upon and dispersed enemy working party on right flank. Time 5.30 a.m.  
Sniping. S.9.c.1 $\frac{1}{2}$ .4 A sniper located, fired upon by one of our snipers and silenced. Time 10.45 a.m. S.9.c.3.1 $\frac{1}{2}$  Man observed wearing steel helmet was fired upon and disappeared.  
Trench Mortars. Stokes Guns fired on enemy support line at 4 a.m. and again in retaliation between 3.00 and 4.30 p.m. No. of rounds 300 Our medium T.Ms. were active intermittently during the morning and again in retaliation between 3.00 and 4.30 p.m. No. of rounds 39  
Patrols. A patrol of one Sergeant and 3 O.R. worked left from sap B.4 on the right side of KENNEDY CRATER and intervening ground. Everything quiet.

ENEMY'S ACTIVITY.

Attitude - quiet.

Artillery. Two 4.1 H.E's fell in ZOUAVE VALLEY near ERSATZ ALLEY. Time 1.50 p.m.

Bombing. 10 rifle grenades fell behind our front line near ARNAU C.T. Time 12 noon. Twelve more fell, some into front line trench and some immediately behind our right flank. One falling upon the parapet was found to be a Mills Rifle grenade. Time 2 p.m.

Trench Mortars.

3" Minnies "fell behind our front line near TANCHOT Time 12.15 p.m.  
2 " " about location S.8.d.5 $\frac{1}{2}$ .6. Time 2.25 p.m.  
1 " " " " S.8.d.7.4 $\frac{1}{2}$ . (Blind) 3.20 p.m.

ENEMY'S DEFENCES.

New work Location S.9.c.4.7 $\frac{1}{2}$  and S.9.c.1 $\frac{1}{2}$ .4. News sand-bags on parapet.  
Sniper's Post " S.9.c.4.7 $\frac{1}{2}$ . Sniping Post built last night  
Location S.9.c.1 $\frac{1}{2}$ .5 Fake sand-bag with small opening underneath.  
" S.9.c.3.5 $\frac{1}{2}$  T.M. located.  
" S.9.c.1 $\frac{1}{2}$ .5 $\frac{1}{2}$  T.M. Located. Stokes Gun Battery notified and T.M. silenced.

ENEMY'S MOVEMENTS.

Movements Observed Location S.9.c.1 $\frac{1}{2}$ .5 $\frac{1}{2}$ . Sentry visible several times during the day. Snipers notified and sentry did not re-appear.

EQUIPMENT.

Rifle Grenades. Enemy threw over Mills rifle grenade. Part of exploded bomb is at our Battalion Headquarters.

MISCELLANEOUS.

Dog heard barking from direction of enemy's lines. Time 8.00 a.m.

(Signed) T. Hodgson,  
Lieutenant.

14th Canadian BattalionNov. 3rd 1916.

Took over O.P. from 13th Battalion, 12 noon.  
Location S.14.d.8.6 $\frac{1}{2}$ .

## Enemy's Defences.

1. Large hole low down in parapet at S15b.4.7 $\frac{1}{2}$ .
2. Suspected observation post in crater at S.15d.1 $\frac{1}{2}$ .5 $\frac{1}{2}$ .
3. Suspected M.G.E. at S.15.c.1 $\frac{1}{2}$ .8 $\frac{1}{2}$ .

## Artillery.

Nil.

## Aeroplane Movements.

Enemy aeroplane flew at a low altitude over our trenches, flying from North to South. Driven off by M.G. fire- Time, 12.30pm.

14th Canadian Battalion.

Nov. 24th 1916.

General Information.

Z(a) Our Trench Mortars and Stokes Mortars were active between 7 a.m. and 7.30 p.m., last night and again about ~~5.30 pm~~ 5.30 p.m. this morning and between 2.30 p.m. and 4.30 p.m. this afternoon. Our heavy Trench Mortars carried out a bombardment of the enemy lines this afternoon. The enemy trenches were badly damaged.

(b) Sniping. 1, S15c.4.4. A Hun was seen looking through a sniping plate and was fired upon with armor-piercing bullets. 9.20 a.m.

11, - S 15c.4.4. A Hun was observed looking over the parapet, evidently observing effects of minnie-wefer fire. Was fired at and disappeared; two blasts from a whistle were heard coming from enemy lines immediately afterwards. 10.00 a.m.

Patrols. One officer and one Sergeant went out from bombing post A 14 ~~ERSATZ~~ crater and for thirty yards up old sap running from crater to enemy's lines. No signs of enemy. Patrol of one Officer and three O.R. worked from ERSATZ CRATER to post A9, putting out a listening post midway between these points and about twenty five yards in advance of our parapet. No sign of enemy. This patrol worked from A9 to A8. When within twenty yards of enemy's lines two lights were sent up and patrol was sniped at. Loud shouting was heard from behind enemy lines. This patrol also put listening post midway between A7 and A8 and about twenty yards from parapet, then worked left coming in at A8. All large shell holes are filled with water. Our wire is in very bad condition from A13 to A7. No sounds of work and enemy very quiet on our front. Patrol out at 11.10 a.m. at 9.40 p.m. and came in at 1.10 a.m. Shouting in ZOUAVE VALLEY could be plainly heard in No Man's Land between 10 and 11 p.m.

Enemy's Activity

At 10.15 a.m. enemy put over 30-35 minnies and T.M. the minnies seemed to come from "Minnie-left and Minnie centre". Most of them were either in front or behind our line. Four hits on ERSATZ ALLEY. No damage done. They came from left of crater.

Enemy's Defences.

An enemy Sniping position is suspected at S 15c.1.8. No movement has yet been seen. This position is being kept under close observation.

Suspected Observation Post (reported yesterday) location S15.4 1.5. has been destroyed by shell fire.

Two T.M. emplacements suspected at S15a4.5. and S15a7.5.

Minnie-wefer machine suspected S15g6.4.

Enemy's Movements.

At "Stand To" men were observed passing a portion of trench which had been destroyed by T.M. at S15B2.8. They were fired on and the traffic stopped. Five of enemy were seen on edge of crater S15D2.7. Three officers wearing peak caps, one carrying a cane the other two were privates and carried rifles slung over shoulder. The light was too poor for identification. They were evidently inspecting the trenches as they were pointing in various directions. They disappeared before snipers could be warned. Time 11.00 a.m.

Artillery. Observation Balloon True Bearing 87°, 104# Bearings taken from our O.P. at S 20 a6.5.



NOV, 5th and 6th.

General Information

Trench Mortars, Our Stokes Guns were active between 10.00 am and 11.00am, and 3pm and 4 pm. Our heavy T.M. were active between 10am and 11.30 am. Our medium T.M. were active intermittently-between between 10.00am and 12.00 noon. 3pm and 4pm.

Artillery

Our field guns shelled enemy spasmodically during afternoon..

Patrols

A patrol of one officer and four O.R. went out between INTERNATIONAL AVENUE AND VINCENT STREET at 10.45 pm, an underground explosion was felt at about location S15c4.3. The Engineer upon enquiry reported having done some blasting about this time. This patrol got to within 20 yards of enemy parapet but could get no closer owing to a westerly wind blowing which made it difficult to move without being heard by the enemy. Enemy sniping active at this point and he appeared restless on the left. The rest of the front quiet.

Enemy's Activity

Attitude. Sniping has increased during the day

Artillery

8 5.9 howitzer shells landed in Zouave Valley about 5.20b4.9. Time 9-05am. About twenty rifle grenades were thrown over-at about twelve midnight all falling in rear of front line no damage done.

Sniping

Enemy snipers more active during the last 24 hours.

Enemy Activity

Trench Mortars, Between 3 and 4 pm 5 mm mms fell near the top of ~~S15c4.3~~ ERSATZ ALLEY

Enemy Defence

New work. Location, S15c3.5 to ~~S15c4.3~~ S15c4.4. The enemy trench between these points has been deepened during the night and rivetting timbers are visible. S15c1.6. Parapet has been built up during the night. S15d1.6. S-T.M. Officer was notified of a suspected T.M.E. at this location. Three trench mortars were sent into this spot. The explosion sent up clouds of brick dust.

Enemy's Movements.

S15c3.5. Low part in parapet where sentry can be seen going to and from his post. At 2pm a German was seen by the Bombing Post A13 about twenty yards about in front of our sap in the disused communication trench for a distance of 30 yards. Nothing was to indicate that the German had been wounded, but tracks up the trench were observed.

Miscellaneous

Location, S15c3.5. During a Stokes gun strafe at 11.00am a man was seen to be blown about 30 feet in the air.

Artillery

Balloons true bearing, 67° and 106° from location S20a 6.4.

NOV. 6th and 7th.

37

General Information

Artillery Our 18 lb Batteries fired spasmodically during the night till 4 am on enemy front line opposite MANDORA SOUTH.

Sniping S 15 c 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  . 7 . A large periscope 1 foot in width was broken by one of our snipers.

Trench Mortars At 6.30 am our Stokes Guns fired 40 rounds at working party reported by our patrol. Location behind enemy front line S15c5.4 to S15c6.2. Our trench mortars were active from 2.30 to 3.45 firing on front line and support opposite MANDORA SOUTH AND MANDORA CENTRAL

PATROLS An offensive patrol of 1 officer and 15 O.R. with our Lewis Gun went out front MANDORA NORTH. The Lewis Gun was set up on the lip of a large shell crater about 25 yards from the enemy line and the Officer and 7 men advanced into enemy wire. A large working party was heard behind enemy front line. Enemy then sent up ~~sent~~ a few flares from his front line trench. The patrol had to return as day was breaking. The patrol went out at 4.45 am and returned at 6.15 am.

Enemy Activity

Artillery. Four 4.1 howitzers shells landed in ZOUAVE VALLE S14d3.4. Time 13.30 pm.  
Machine Gun fired on our working sometime during the night

Enemy Defences

New work, Location S15c6.7. The support in the vicinity have been deepened and rivetting timbers are to be seen, at this point a sign board has been thrown face downwards over the parapet.

S15c5 $\frac{1}{2}$ .3. New earth thrown over parapet of front line trench. S15c4.1. A party was observed working at this location. It was dispersed by our M.G. fire

Enemy Movements

Trenches Trucks S15c5.5 $\frac{1}{2}$  and S15c5.9. A traction path has been made between these points during the night.  
Movements Observed ~~S15c4.1~~ S15c3 $\frac{1}{2}$ .4 $\frac{1}{2}$ . Movements observed through breach in ~~my's~~ parapet. Fired at by our snipers.

NOV. 8 and 9th 1916

38

General Information

Our Operations, S15a2.1. A sniper was active at this location our snipers fired on this position with apparently good results.

M.G. Our machine guns were active during the night firing upon and dispersing work parties.

T.M. Our Stokes were active between 3.30 and 4.15 pm firing on enemy front and support lines with good results. they were again active at 4.30 pm, retaliating to enemy fire, 365 shells were fired during this period.

Our medium and heavy trench mortars were active between 3.00 and 4.00 pm. 24 shells were fired by heavy trench mortars during this period

Patrols A patrol of one Sergeant and 3 O.R. went out from the extreme right of the Battalion on our left at Location S15a4. 6. A party of Germans had been reported seen in front of enemy trench at this point. The patrol proceeded from left to right crossing a disused communication trench carefully examining every suspicious feature and proceeding to enemy wire in several places. No sign of this reported patrol was discovered. At about Location S14b3. a small dugout was discovered facing our lines, containing over 20 aerial torpedoes one of which was brought in and handed over to T.M. Battery Headquarters for examination a report is expected and will be forwarded in due course Two dead British soldiers were found near the dugout in a bad state of decomposition. The patrol returned to bombing post A14 at ERSATZ CORNER. It is important to note that this dugout has never to our knowledge been previously reported.

Enemy Activity

Attitude. Quiet.

Artillery. Our aeroplanes were shelled at frequent intervals during the day.

Bombing. Enemy put over 6 rifle grenades in the neighborhood of ERSATZ ALLEY. No damage done.

T.M. Three minnies were sent over in our support lines immediately on the left of INTERNATIONAL AVENUE. No damage done. Time 4.20 pm

M.G. Nil

Enemy Defences

Working parties at location S15c7.2. S15c6.3. S15a2.1 apparently engaged in repairing trench. They were dispersed by our M.G. fire, casualties being inflicted at first location Observation Post O.P. Located at S15d. 5.

M.G.E. Location S15c"UL" S15c7.9. Suspected M"G"E" reported yesterday destroyed by our T.M.B.

Location S15c2.5. Suspected M.G.E. reported to Medium T.M.B.

Enemy Movements and OrganisationMovements Observed

Location, S15c7.2. Two men were seen carrying what was apparently timber. Time 6.45 am

Location S15c4.3. Man appeared carrying a large thin object about 5 feet long which he pushed into a small hole in the parapet of intersecting trench.

Location opposite Bule Bull C.T. A German was seen walking along the parapet was fired at and fell in a manner to suggest he had been hit. Time 11.30 pm

Miscellaneous Location S15d 6.4. Dense black smoke was seen apparently from a cook kitchen. Artillery notified at 3.15 am. A dog strayed into one of our listening posts from direction of enemy lines. No identifications found upon it.

Artillery

Balloons true bearing 86 taken from S20a6.6. An incendiary bomb was dropped from one of our planes at 3.45 pm. when the smoke cleared away the balloon could not be seen.

INTELLIGENCE REPORT.

November 18-19th.

GENERAL INFORMATION.

Our Operations.

Sniping. S.15.a.2 $\frac{1}{2}$ .8. A sniper was seen at this location. He was fired upon by our snipers. Time 9.45 a.m. S.9.c.2 $\frac{1}{2}$ . A Hun wearing a forage cap was seen looking over the parapet - claimed by one of our snipers. Time 10.45 a.m. S.9.c.1 $\frac{1}{2}$ .5. A box periscope was seen, was fired-upon and disappeared. Time 10.30 a.m.

Trench Mortars

Stokes Guns were active between 10.40 and 11.40 a.m. also from 2.30 - 4.15 p.m. firing on enemy's front position with good results No. of rounds fired 210. Medium T.Ms. were active from 10.30 to 11.40 a.m. and from 3.30 to 4.30 p.m. directing their fire on enemy's support lines.

Enemy's Activity.

Attitude - Quiet.

Bombing. 10 rifle grenades fell between our front and support lines near TANCHOT STREET No damage done. Time 2.30 p.m.

About 12 more fell behind our front line near ARNAU C.T. No damage done. Time 3.45 p.m.

Machine Guns. Enemy M.Gs. were active from support trenches firing at one of our aeroplanes Time 3.15 p.m.

Trench Mortars. At 10.30 a.m. four "Minnies" fell behind our front line near BABRIEL C.T. (1 blind) and 6 more "Minnies" fell behind our front line between BRISSON C.T. and BARRABAS C.T. Time 4.30 p.m. No damage done.

ENEMY'S DEFENCES.

Location S.9.c.1 $\frac{1}{2}$ .5.	Suspected Listening Post.
" S.9.c.2 $\frac{1}{2}$ .	" Observation Post.
" S.9.c.4 $\frac{1}{2}$ .	" Trench Mortar Emplacement.

ENEMY'S MOVEMENTS.

Movements observed location S.9.c.3.1 Two men seen passing low part in trench. Time 8.30 a.m. Location S.15.a.3.4 Man seen carrying bundle of sand-bags. Time 8.50 a.m.

Location S.15.a.2 $\frac{1}{2}$ .7. A sand-bag was thrown over enemy's parapet. Seemed to contain rubbish. Time 3.45 p.m.

COMMUNICATIONS.

Light Signal - Red Rocket fired from enemy front line behind TWIN CRATER. Nothing Unusual followed. Time 7.05 p.m.

(Signed) T. Hodgson.

Lieutenant.

UNIT	DESTINATION	ROUTE	DEPARTURE	GUIDES OF 13th Batt.	REMARKS
No 4 Company 1 Section Bombers and Lewis Guns	Trenches of No 2 Coy 13th Battalion.	ERSATZ TRENCH	at 11.45 am	Junction of Ersatz Trench and Zouave Valley at noon	Movements at Cabaret Rouge regulated by 15th Battali on Centrols.
No 3 Company and Lewis Guns	No "3 Company" 13th Battalion	" "	at 12.05 pm	" "	" "
No 2 Company, 2 Sections Bombers and Lewis Guns	No 1 Company 13th Battalion	WORTLEY AVENUE	at 11.45 am	Junction of Wortley Avenue and Zouave Valley at 12.30 pm	
No 1 Company 1 Section Bombers and Lewis Guns	No 4 Company 13th Battalion	" "	at 12.05 pm	" "	

All movements by half Companies at 10 minute intervals.

INTELLIGENCE REPORT.

November 20 - 21st

GENERAL INFORMATION.

Our Operations.

Artillery - Our 18 pounders fired 12 rounds into enemy front line opposite KENNEDY CRATER. Time 11.30 p.m.

Bombing - Rifle Grenades were fired into enemy front line opposite KENNEDY CRATER. Time 11.45 p.m.

Sniping S.O.c. 2.1 A Hun was seen looking over parapet, fired upon and disappeared. Time 9 a.m. Enemy sniper fired upon and silenced by one of our sentries. Location - left of GUNNER CRATER. Time 3.40 p.m.

Machine Guns Our M.Gs. fired intermittently throughout the ~~day~~ night.

Trench Mortars Stokes Guns fired 165 rounds on enemy front line time 11.30 a.m. At 1.30 a.m. enemy supports were barraged. At 11 a.m. and 2.30 p.m. in retaliation for enemy T.Ms. Total No. of rounds fired during 24 hours - 270 rounds.

Medium T.Ms.	Time	-Rounds.	Objective.
	11.30 p.m.	12	S.O.c.3.1 $\frac{1}{2}$ to S.O.c.4.1 $\frac{1}{2}$
	7.45 a.m.	6	S.O.c.3.1 $\frac{1}{2}$
	9.30 a.m.	9	S.O.c.3.3.
	12.05 p.m.	18	S.O.c.3.1 $\frac{1}{2}$ to S.O.c.3.3.
	2.40 p.m.	6	S.O.c.3.7. S.O.c.3.1 $\frac{1}{2}$

Patrols A patrol of one Officer and 3 O.R. went out from Sap B.10 and returned to Sap B.9 During the patrol a mine crater (particulars given in morning report) was examined. This patrol several times approached to within few yards of enemy wire.

ENEMY ACTIVITY.

Attitude - slightly more aggressive

Artillery - Five 4.1 H.E. shells fell in ZOUAVE VALLEY at the foot of UHLAN AVENUE. No damage done. Time 8.55 p.m.

Bombing - A few rifle grenades fell in front of SOUCHEZ VALLEY No damage. Time 8.00 a.m. A few more fell in ARNAU C.T. and behind front line on our right flank. Time between 10.30 a.m. and 12 noon No damage done.

Machine Guns and Snipers active during the night and early morning killing two men and wounding two others on wiring party.

Trench Mortars. 3 "Minnies" location S.8.1.6.7 Time 8 a.m.  
4 " " " S.8.1.6.7. " 9.45 a.m.  
5 " " " behind support line on right

flank Time 10.30 a.m. No damage.

1 "Minnie" fell in JESMOND STREET blowing in part of trench and killing one man Time 3.15 p.m.

ENEMY MOVEMENTS. A transport was heard at 8.30 a.m. and again at 9.45 a.m. The sound came from a direction N.E.-by E. of CRATER at S.8.1.8.5. During Stokes Gun Bombardment a dull explosion was heard in enemy front line opposite Sap B.5. followed by column of earth thrown about 100 feet high.

(Signed) T. Hodgson,

Lieutenant.

INTELLIGENCE REPORT.

November wq - 22nd

Our Operations.

Sniping - Our snipers fired at two of the enemy observed moving  
overland behind enemy front line opposite sap B,7

French Mortars - Stokes Gun Battery fired on enemy machine gun  
opposite KENNEDY CRATER silencing same, also on enemy working party  
behind front line opposite GUNNER CRATER. Time 12.30 - 200 p.m.

ENEMY ACTIVITY Attitude - Quiet

Bombing - A few rifle grenades fell behind our front line near  
GABRIEL C.T. No damage done. Time 2.10 p.m.

Machine Guns. Enemy M.Gs. were active during the night firing on  
our working parties.

ENEMY DEFENCES.

Sniping - Location S.9.c.3.74 Sniper very active at this point.  
Time 8.10 a.m.

M. G. Location S.9.c.24.2 Suspected M.G. Emplacement

Observation hampered by mist.

This section relieved by 13th Canadian Infantry Battalion at 11 a.m.

(Signed) T. Hodgson,

Lieutenant.

CONFIDENTIAL  
WAR DIARY  
OF  
14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION  
DECEMBER 1916.  
WITH APPENDICES II/1 to II/4, III/1 to III/10  
and IV/1 to IV/4.  
VOLUME 16 - 12.



WAR DIARY

14th Canadian Battalion 1st Canadian Division,  
from 1st to 31st December, 1916.

Volume 22.

Diary Text

5 Pages.

Appendix II/2

O.O. No. 110 dated the 16th December, instructions regarding relief of 14th by 13th Cdn. Bn. on the 17th December.

" II/3

O.O. No. 111 dated the 18th December, instructions regarding relief of 14th Bn. by 87th Bn. in Bde. support on the 21st December.

" II/4

O.O. 112 dated the 20th December, instructions regarding relief of 38th Bn. and 14th Cdn. Bn. in Corps reserve area on the 22nd December.

" III/1 to  
III/10

Intelligence report for the month of December

" IV/1

Disposition report for the 12th December.

" IV/2

Situation report from the 12th to 16th December.

" IV/3

Honours and awards

" IV/5

Reinforcements received during December 1916.

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR

DIARY

DECEMBER

1916.

TEXT.

EVGSE DOCKET

THE NATIONAL  
ARCHIVES  
OF CANADA

## 14th CANADIAN BATTALION.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## WAR DIARY

or

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

DECEMBER 1916.

Army Form C. 2118.

PAGE 1

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date 1916	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
CARENCY SECTION. BRIGADE SUPPORT. DALY'S.	Dec. 1st.		Fine day. Battalion in Brigade Support, CARENCY SECTION, Battalion Headquarters at DALY'S, near HOSPITAL CORNER. Working Parties totalling three Officers and 150 other ranks worked carrying material and general repairs to front line and support trenches.	
---do---	Dec. 2nd.		Fair day - Cloudy. Working parties totalling three Officers and 120 other ranks furnished for work on Communication Trenches, revetting and digging, and carrying material.	
---do---	Dec. 3rd.		Fair day - Cloudy and slightly showery. Working Parties totalling three Officers and 135 other ranks furnished for revetting Communication trenches and carrying wiring material.	II/1
---do---	Dec. 4th.		Fair day. Working Parties totalling three Officers and 140 other ranks furnished for carrying wire, sandbags, stakes, and general repairs to trenches.	IV/4
---do---	Dec. 5th.		Very fine day. 14th Canadian Battalion relieved in Brigade Support position CARENCY SECTION by 1st Canadian Battalion. 14th Canadian Battalion in Divisional Reserve at ESTREE CAUCHY.	IV/4
DIVISIONAL RESERVE, ESTREE CAUCHY.	Dec. 6th.		Very wet day. Morning devoted to cleaning up of kit etc. Muster Parade and Kit Inspection in the afternoon.	
---do---	Dec. 7th.		Fine day - very cold and clear. Morning devoted to rest. Inspection by Commanding Officer in afternoon at 1 p.m.	
---do---	Dec. 8th.		Very wet day, finer in the afternoon. Lecture to the non-commissioned Officers of the Battalion by Captain D. Worrall in Y. M. C. A. on Discipline. Squad Platoon Section, Company and Arm Drill in the afternoon from 2:00 to 3:30 p.m.	

## 14th CANADIAN BATTALION.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II.  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

## WAR DIARY

or

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

Army Form C. 2118.

PAGE 2.

(Erase heading not required.)

DECEMBER 1916.

Place	Date 1916	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
DIVISIONAL RESERVE, ESTREE CAUCHY:	Dec. 9th.		Wet afternoon, morning fair. Inspection by the Officer Commanding in the morning, also platoon, company and squad drill. Lecture to the Officers of the Battalion at noon by Major-General A. W. Currie, G.O.C. 1st Canadian Division, on "Discipline and Responsibilities of Officers".	
	Dec. 10th.		Fair Day. Protestant and Roman Catholic Church Parades in morning. Bathing Parade to Bath House at HOCOURT in the afternoon.	
----do----	Dec. 11th.		Rainy day. Day spent in rest. Inspection of reinforcements received (vide attached list) in the morning.	
---do---	Dec. 12th.		Very dull day. 14th Canadian Battalion relieved 5th Canadian Battalion in the left Sub-Sector BERTHOVAL SECTION. Relief complete at 1:35 p.m. Working Parties of 220 other ranks furnished for maintenance of front line and support trenches.	III/1, IV/2 IV/1
BERTHOVAL SECTION, LEFT SUB- SECTOR.	Dec. 13th.		Dull Day. Battalion in trenches. Bombardment by our Light and Heavy Trench Mortars from 12 noon to 1 p.m. Working Parties: 2 Officers and 210 other ranks furnished for general repairs and mainten- ance of front line and support trenches, and wiring of front line trenches.	III/2, IV/2 III/3.
---do---	Dec. 14th.		Dull Day. Bombardment of enemy front line and support trenches by our Stokes Guns and Medium Trench Mortars (60 pounders) lasting one and one-half hours. About 104 enemy shells of heavy calibre fell on our front line and support trenches between 3:00 and 4:00 p.m. Working Parties totalling 2 Officers and 220 other ranks furnished for wiring, general maintenance of front line and support trenches and carrying material.	III/4, IV/2 III/5.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

PAGE 3:

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

DECEMBER 1916.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
BERTHONVAL SECTION LEFT SUB-SECTOR TRENCHES:	Dec. 15th.		Dull Day: Bombardment of enemy lines by our Stikew Guns, Medium and Heavy Trench Mortars between 3:30 and 4:00 p.m. Enemy retaliated with heavy calibre shells, about thirty 5:9s., on our support line of trenches. Working Parties totalling 2 Officers and 215 other ranks rebuilding front line trenches and support line, wiring front line, and carrying material.	III/6, IV/2 III/7.
--do--	Dec. 16th		Dull Day; very misty. 14th Canadian Battalion relieved by the 13th Canadian Battalion in front line and support trenches. 14th Battalion moved to Brigade Reserve, BERTHONVAL WOOD. Relief complete at 2:10 p.m. Working Parties totalling 2 Officers and 100 other ranks carrying material and revetting communication trenches; near front line.	II/2 III/8, IV/2 III/9, IV/4
BERTHONVAL WOOD BRIGADE RESERVE:	Dec. 17th.		Dull Day - Misty: Battalion in dugouts in Brigade Reserve, Berthonval Wood. Nothing to report. Working Parties totalling three Officers and 295 other ranks for work on communication trenches, carrying material, and wiring.	III/10
--do--	Dec. 18th.		Dull Day: Working parties of three Officers and 295 other ranks for work on communication trenches and carrying material.	
--do--	Dec. 19th.		Wet Day; light fall of snow in the afternoon and during the night. Nothing to report. A few shells fell in close proximity to Berthonval wood, two of which were 'duds' the others doing no damage at all. Working parties totalling 3 Officers and 275 other ranks furnished for maintenance of communication trenches, wiring, and carrying material.	
--do--	Dec. 20th.		Very fine day, cold and clear. Aircraft of both sides very active during the forenoon and early afternoon. One of our planes seen to drive a German plane to earth. Heavy bombardment in the afternoon by 3rd Canadian Division, who satisfactorily raided the enemy trenches. Working parties totalling 3 Officers and 275 other ranks furnished for carrying material and maintenance of communication trenches.	

## 14th CANADIAN BATTALION.

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

PAGE #4 INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

DECEMBER 1916.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date 1916	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
BERTHOVAL WOOD BRIGADE RESERVE.	Dec. 21st.		Dull Day - slightly showery. 14th Canadian Battalion relieved by 87th Battalion, Grenadier Guards of Canada, a Brigade Reserve. 14th Canadian Battalion to Divisional Reserve Billets at ESTREE CAUCHY.	5 II/3
REST BILLETTS BRUAY.	Dec.	22nd.	Very wet day, rainy until 2 p.m. 14th Canadian Battalion marched from billets at ESTREE CAUCHY at 8.00 a.m. The following was the order of march: 14th Canadian Battalion. 15th Canadian Battalion. 13th Canadian Battalion. 16th Canadian Battalion. 3rd Brigade Machine Gun Company. 3rd Canadian Trench Mortar Battery. 1st Field Company Canadian Engineers. 14th Canadian Battalion arrived in billets at BRUAY at 1 p.m. Headquarters Officers Mess and Orderly Room situated at 69 and 71 RUE DES TOMBELLES.	II/4 IV/4
---do---	Dec.	23rd.	Fair Day, one or two light showers. 8.30 a.m. to 12 noon Muster Parade and Kit Inspection. 1.30 to 4 p.m. Squad section and Platoon Drill With and without Arms.	IV/4
---do---	Dec.	24th.	Fine day: Protestant and Roman Catholic Church Parades in the morning, the former service held in the town theatre and the latter in the Chapel of the Mines.	
---do---	Dec.	25th	Fine Day. Christmas Day - Holiday. The men were provided with a good dinner including Port Wine and Cigars. Mass for the Roman Catholics celebrated in the morning.	

## 14th CANADIAN BATTALION.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

PAGE 5.

WAR DIARY  
OR  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

DECEMBER 1916.

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	6	Remarks and references to Appendices
REST BILLETTS BEUAY.	Dec. 26th.		Fine day. One half the Battalion to Bath House at MAISNIL LES RUITZ in the morning and one half in the afternoon. Those not on Bath Parade in the morning and those not on in the afternoon carried on at Squad section and Platoon Drill.		
--do--	Dec. 27th.		Fine day. <u>Training</u> A.M.: Arm drill, Charger Loading, Gas Helmet Inspection, Squad, section Platoon and Company drill without and with arms. P.M.: <del>Half Holiday</del> . Half Holiday. Battalion attended theatre in the evening.		
--do--	Dec. 28th.		Dull Day. <u>Training</u> : A.M.: Arm drill, Guards and Saluting, and Inspection of Companies by Officer Commanding. P.M.: Squad, Section, Platoon and Company Drill with and without Arms.		
--do--	Dec. 29th.		Very wet day. <u>Training</u> : A.M.: Squad, Section, Platoon, Company and Arm Drill, Bayonet Fighting and extended order work. P.M.: Battalion attended Band Concert given by the Canadian Massed Bands at the town theatre from 1.30 to 3.30 p.m.		
--do--	Dec. 30th.		Fair Day. <u>Training</u> . A.M.: Company and Arm Drill, Bayonet Fighting, Guards and Saluting. P.M.: Route March.		
--do--	Dec. 31st.		Dull Day - inclined to be rainy. Church Pardes. Protestants at 11 a.m. and Roman Catholics at 10.00 a.m. Holy Communion in the theatre at 8.00 a.m. <del>and in the theatre</del> Sp		IV/3

*Paul McGeough*  
Major,  
Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion.

14th CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

WAR DIARY

DECEMBER 1916.

APPENDICES 11/1 to 11/4, 111/1 to 111/10, and  
IV/1 to IV/4.

FALSE DOCKET





INDEX TO APPENDICES.

U. 7

WAR DIARY.....DECEMBER 1916.

14th Canadian Battalion.....Royal Montreal Regiment.

-----oo00oo-----

Operation Orders.....II/1, II/2, II/3 and II/4.  
Intelligence Reports.....III/1, III/2, III/3, III/4,  
III/5, III/6, III/7, III/8, III/9,  
and III/10.  
Disposition Report.....IV/1.  
Situation Reports.....IV/2.  
Honours and Rewards.....IV/3.  
Reinforcements.....IV/4.

OPERATION ORDERS NO. 109SECRET. 60 8

by  
~~Lieut~~ Major Gault McCombe  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.  
 -----00000-----

In the Field,  
 December 3rd 1916.

- Relief. 1. The 14th Canadian Battalion will be relieved by the 1st Canadian Battalion in Brigade Support Position on December 4th
- Movement 2. Upon completion of relief, Units will proceed independently to Billets in Divisional Reserve at ESTREE CAUCHY.
- Billeting3. Entire Intelligence Section, in charge of Lieut. Hodgson Party will proceed to Estree Cauchy at 8 a.m. and arrange billets. Guides will meet units outside the village and conduct them to their billets,
- Maps. 4. All Maps, Defence Schemes, etc., to be handed over to ~~relief~~ relieving units and receipts obtained.
- Sanitation5. Billets and surrounding locality must be left scrupulously clean and certificate obtained. An inspection of the billets will be made by a Headquarters Officer and the Medical Officer during the forenoon.
- Baggage. 6. Limbers will be at CARENCY at 11 a.m. to transport baggage Traffic regulations do not permit of their coming any further forward in daylight.
- Meals. 7. Field Kitchens will have a hot meal ready for troops upon their arrival at billets.
- Reports. 8. Completion of relief, which will start about 1 p.m. to be reported to Headquarters. Arrival at Billets, with particulars of any stragglers etc., to be reported to Orderly Room.
- 9/ ACKNOWLEDGE.

(Signed) Arthur Plow

Lieutenant and Adjutant,

for O.C. 14th Canadian Battalion.



by  
 Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark M.C.,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

Appendix II/2

-----oo00oo-----

In the Field.

December 18th 1916.

- Relief.** 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will be relieved in the LEFT SUB-SECTOR by the 13th CANADIAN BATTALION on December 18.
- Movement.** 2. Upon completion of relief Units will proceed independently by platoons to BRIGADE RESERVE, BERTHONVAL WOOD, via WORTLEY, and BOYEAU 1, 2 and 3 only.
- Guides.** 3. One guide from each platoon, one from each Machine Gun position, and one from each detail will "Fall In" at Orderly Room at 8.30 a.m. sharp under Lieutenant J.O'CONNOR and meet the relieving Unit at the Junction of ERSATZ and ZOUAVE VALLEY and guide them to their positions.
- Battalion Scouts** 4. One Battalion scout will report to each Company Commander and to Machine Gun Officer at 9.30 a.m. and remain with the Unit until he has guided them to their position in reserve.
- Maps.** 5. Maps, Plans, Defence Schemes, etc., relating to the area to be handed over and receipts obtained.
- Sanitation** 6. All area occupied by units to be left thoroughly clean and certificates obtained.
- Trench Stores** 7. Receipts to be obtained for Trench Stores. Very Pistols rubber boots, and periscopes are NOT trench stores and must be carried out.
- Code.** 8. Completion of relief to be notified Battalion Headquarters by code word "NAVY".
- Meals.** 9. All Field Kitchens will be available in new position and Quartermaster will have hot meal ready for the troops upon arrival.
- Reports.** 10. As soon as possible after arrival in Reserve, Units will forward accurate Disposition reports to Headquarters accompanied by Sanitary Certificates, trench stores receipts &c
11. ACKNOWLEDGE.

*Michael Lewis*  
 Lieutenant and Adjutant,  
 for O.C. 14th Canadian Battalion.

Issued at/by Orderly

Copy No. 1 to No.1 Company

"	"	2	"	"	2	"
"	"	3	"	"	3	"
"	"	4	"	"	4	"
"	"	5	"	M.G.O., Int.O., Bomb.O.		
"	"	6	"	13th Canadian Battalion.		
"	"	7	"	3rd Can. Inf. Bde. <i>for information</i>		
"	"	8	"	Quartermaster.		
"	"	9	"	Orderly Room.		
"	"	10	"	War Diary.		
"	"	11	"	War Diary.		



BY

Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark M.C.  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.

Appendix II/3

-----00000-----

In the Field,  
 December 18th 1916.

- Relief:** 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION in Brigade Reserve, will be relieved by the 87th CANADIAN BATTALION on December 21st relief commencing at 1.30 p.m.
- Movement:** 2. On completion of relief Units will proceed independently to billets in Divisional Reserve at ESTREE CAUCHY maintaining strict march discipline en route.
- Billeting Party:** 3. Entire Intelligence Section will proceed to ESTREE CAUCHY at 8 a.m. on December 21st to arrange billets. Guides will be posted by them to meet units and conduct them to their billets.
- Maps etc:** 4. All Maps, Defence Schemes, plans, etc., will be handed over to incoming unit and receipts obtained in duplicate one copy to be sent to orderly room as soon as possible.
- Sanitation:** 5. Dug-outs and surrounding localities will be left in a clean and sanitary condition and certificates obtained to that effect.
- Reports:** 6. Completion of relief will be reported to headquarters and on arrival at billets any particulars of stragglers etc will be reported.
- Baggage:** 7. All articles not absolutely required will be sent out by returning ration limbers on afternoon of December 20th. On December 21st limbers will report at Battalion Headquarters at 11 a.m. for remainder of baggage.

Lieutenant and Adjutant,  
 for C. C. 14th Canadian Battalion.

Issued at.....by Orderly.

Copy No. 1 to No. 1 Company

"	2	"	2	"
"	3	"	3	"
"	4	"	4	"
"	5	to	R.S.M. and Headquarters Details.	
"	6	"	M.G.O., Int. O., Bomb. Off.	
"	7	"	87th Canadian Infantry Battalion.	
"	8	"	3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade.	
"	9	"	Orderly Room.	
"	10	"	Adjutant.	
"	11	"	War Diary.	
"	12	"	"	"





by  
 Lieut.-Colonel R. P. Clark, M.C.,  
 Commanding 14th Canadian Battalion,  
 Royal Montreal Regiment.  
 -----ooOoo-----

Appendix II/4

In the Field,  
 December 20th 1916.

- Relief. 1. The 14th CANADIAN BATTALION will relieve the 38th CANADIAN BATTALION in the Corps Reserve Area at BRUAY on December 22nd, 1916.
- Column. 2. The column will march as follows:- *Passes Starting Point*
- |                            |         |
|----------------------------|---------|
| Brigade Headquarters.      | 8:00 am |
| 14th Canadian Battalion.   | 8:05 am |
| 15th Canadian Battalion.   | 8:13 am |
| 13th Canadian Battalion.   | 8:27 am |
| 16th Canadian Battalion.   | 8:38 am |
| 3rd Canadian M.G. Company. | 8:48 am |
| 3rd " T.M. Battery.        | 9:00 am |
| 2nd Field Company C.E.     | 9:05 am |
- Starting Point. 3. Head of Column will pass starting point, Main Road opposite Cemetery, ESTREES CAUCHY at 8 a.m.
- Parade. 4. The Battalion will parade at Battalion Parade Ground at ESTREES CAUCHY at 7.30 a.m. ready to move off. Parade States to be handed in by 7.15 a.m.
- Transport. 5. Transport will march in rear of Battalion.
- Halts. 6. Halts will take place at 10 minutes to each hour.
- Discipline. 7. The strictest march discipline will be maintained throughout the march and every effort made to prevent men from falling out. Straggling is a grave reflection on the training and discipline of a Battalion.
- Marching States. 8. Marching In States will be handed in immediately on arrival at BRUAY.
- Officers' Baggage. 9. Officers' Baggage will be collected at 6.30 a.m.
- Billets. 10. Billets will be left in a clean and sanitary condition and receipts obtained to that effect, also certificates that no damage has been done.
- Cleanliness. 11. The men will present a clean appearance with buttons ~~shined~~ and badges polished and no trace of mud on their clothes or equipment. Equipment must be worn the regulation way

*[Signature]*  
 Lieutenant and Adjutant,  
 for C.O. 14th Canadian Battalion.

Issued at.....by Orderly.  
 Copy No. 1 to No. 1 Company.

"	"	2	"	"	2	"
"	"	3	"	"	3	"
"	"	4	"	"	4	"
"	"	5	"	R.S.M. & H.Q. Details		
"	"	6	"	M.G.O., Int.O., Bomb. Offr.		
"	"	7	"	Q.M. & T.O.		
"	"	8	"	3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade.		
"	"	9	"	Orderly Room.		
"	"	10	"	Adjutant.		
"	"	11	"	War Diary		
"	"	12	"	"		



Intelligence Report.

Appendix 12  
III/1

14th Canadian Battalion.....Royal Montreal Regiment.

December 12th 1916.

ENEMY ACTIVITY.

Since the relief this afternoon the enemy has been very quiet. There has been practically no sniping or machine gun fire. The German trench mortars were fairly active as follows.

At 3.50 p.m. 8 medium T.Ms fell to the left of BLUE BULL behind the support line. They did no damage.

At 4.35 p.m. 6 more landed in the same locality.

The enemy's artillery fired a few shells at irregular intervals doing no damage. At 1 a.m. four 4.1 shells came from the left and struck the right of VINCENT ST, between the front and support lines. Three were duds. At 4.35 one 4.9 howitzer exploded just above and about 100 yards to the right doing no damage.

OUR ARTILLERY.

At 3.25 p.m. our field batteries bombarded the enemy's support lines and back area for about 20 minutes. The weather was too misty to determine if any damage was done.

Our 60 lb T.M. fired 8 rounds on enemy's support line at 4.30 p.m.

During the day there were 35 stokes shells fired.

At 3 p.m. our machine guns fired a few bursts which was the first machine gun fire since the relief.

During the entire afternoon it was impossible to observe the German front line from O.P. because of mist.

(Signed) D. M. McRae.  
Lieutenant.



14th Canadian Battalion..... Royal Montreal Regiment;

December 13th 1916.

ENEMY'S ACTIVITY.

Enemy's attitude very quiet. At about 5 p.m. the Battalion on our left sent over some Stokes shells and the Germans retaliated with 3 minenwerfers damaging our front line at HARTUNG LEFT to a slight extent. At 7 p.m. the enemy fired 6 minenwerfers hitting our support lines at BROWNS BURROWS but doing little damage. During the entire night there has been practically no rifle fire of any description. At 9.00 p.m. a German party was observed digging about thirty yards to the right of MONTREAL CRATER and was dispersed by our Lewis Guns. There were small enemy parties working on his entire front line from opposite HARTUNG to VINCENT STREET. There was no enemy artillery fire. At 10 p.m. we sent out a patrol of 1 Officer and 4 other ranks to thoroughly inspect the condition of the enemy wire from ERSATZ CRATER to VINCENT STREET. Our wire from the CRATERS to GRANBY STREET is in very good condition consisting of two rows of French wire with barbed wire apron and trip wire besides a quantity of irregular old wire. This wire is unbroken except at Listening Posts.

From GRANBY to INTERNATIONAL our wire is weaker consisting of nothing but French wire alone. There are two rows of French wire but in most places the rows are two yards apart and offer little resistance. The remainder of the front is in good shape except the last 40 yards to the left of VINCENT STREET where there is nothing but French wire and needs a little barbed wire.

During the time the patrol was out no enemy patrols were seen and only one rifle shot was fired and no machine guns during the hour and a half.

Our T.Ms and artillery have been quiet during the night. Our Support Machine Guns fired intermittently throughout the night.

(Signed) D. M. McRae,  
Lieutenant.



14th Canadian Battalion ..... Royal Montreal Regiment.  
December 13th 1916.

ENEMY DEFENCES.

Location S.21.b.9.3 Working Party of three men seen at 8.30 a.m.  
Location S.15.c.4 $\frac{1}{2}$ .3 $\frac{1}{2}$  Enemy wiring Party was observed at 4.30 a.m. and was dispersed by our Lewis Gun Fire.

Considerable New work was done on enemy trenches during night. At many points opposite our frontage new revetting posts are visible.

Location S.15.a.1 $\frac{1}{2}$ . $\frac{1}{2}$ . A listening post of two men were seen returning to enemy trench at 5.30 a.m. We opened fire with Lewis Gun and wounded one man.

Location S.15.c.6.3 $\frac{1}{2}$  and S.15.c.4 $\frac{1}{2}$ /4 $\frac{1}{2}$ . Sniping posts. Two enemy snipers were silenced by Battalion snipers.

ENEMY MOVEMENTS.

Location S.15.a.3.0. Two men were seen to pass low part in C.T. coming towards enemy front line at 9.15 a.m. At 9.45 a.m. one man returned to support line carrying a shovel.

ENEMY ARTILLERY.

Time.	No. of rounds.	Nature of Gun	Objective.
8.55 a.m.	3	Heavy T.M.	S.14.b.7.5 $\frac{1}{2}$
10 - 12 noon	18	77 mm.	S.20.a.central
10.40 a.m.	2	18 pdrs. shrap.	ZOUAVE VALLEY.
1 p.m. to 3.20 pm	11	77 mm. 8 duds	S.20.a.central.
1 p.m. - 2.30 pm.	15	Heavy T.M.	S.14.b.8 $\frac{1}{2}$ .4

OUR ARTILLERY.

During the day our 18 pounders sent over ninety eight rounds landing in enemy front and support trenches.

At 1 p.m. and 3 p.m. our stokes fired twenty rounds.

Enemy's T.M.s destroyed 25 yards of our trench and a deep dugout in HARTUNG LEFT (about 40 yards to the left of Junction with HARTUNG RIGHT)

(Signed) D. M. McRae,  
Lieutenant.





## Intelligence Report.

14th Canadian Battalion.....Royal Montreal Regiment,  
December 14th 1956.

ENEMY DEFENCES.

Our Patrol reports that the enemy wire from S.15.c.4 $\frac{1}{2}$ .4 to S.15.c.3 $\frac{1}{2}$ .5 is in very poor condition and consists of very little of anything but a little loose barbed wire. No enemy working parties were observed on our front during the night. A working party seen near MONTREAL CRATER was dispersed by our Lewis Gun Fire. From S.15.c.4 $\frac{1}{2}$ .4 to S.15.c.3 $\frac{1}{2}$ .5 the enemy's trench seems to be in a poor condition as two parties of about 20 men each were observed by our patrol to first climb out at the first point and enter again at the second. By aid of star shells smoke was seen coming out of several points in the enemy front line near the above points but no definite locations could be obtained.

ENEMY ATTITUDE.

The enemy was extremely quiet and there was absolutely no fire of any kind except that two minenwerfers dropped on HARTUNG LEFT which did the trench considerable damage. The enemy used more star shells than usual during the night.

At 10.40 p.m. a Patrol of 5 other ranks left our lines at VINCENT STREET and inspected the enemy wire opposite as reported above. They returned at 12.30 a.m. further work being impossible because of the intense cold and wind.

OUR ARTILLERY.

Our artillery and trench mortars have been very quiet.

Our machine guns have fired intermittently during the night on the enemy's back area.

(Signed) D. M. McRae,  
Lieutenant.



## Intelligence Report.

14th Canadian Battalion.....Royal Montreal Regiment.

December 14th 1916.

ENEMY DEFENCES.

Location S.15.a.2 $\frac{1}{2}$ . $\frac{1}{2}$  Trench has been repaired with sandbags.  
 Location S.15.a.2.2. Working Party of two men seen dumping a bucket of refuse over side of C.T. Time 8.00 a.m.  
 Location S.15.c.4.9 Box Periscope.  
 " S.15.a.1.1 $\frac{1}{2}$  Box Periscope was knocked down by sniper.  
 " S.16.c.5 $\frac{1}{2}$ .8 $\frac{1}{2}$  Smoke was seen rising from this location  
 Probabl a dugout. Artillery was notified and it opened up with good results. One direct hit was made.

ENEMY MOVEMENTS AND ORGANISATION.

Location S.15.d.1 $\frac{1}{2}$ .5 Two men left the trench and walked about fifty yards overland finally disappearing in old crater. The trench at this point was blown in this morning by shell fire.  
 Location S.15.c.4.9. Three men were seen. Lewis Gun fired on them and inflicted at least one casualty.  
 Location S.15.c.2 $\frac{1}{2}$ .9 $\frac{1}{2}$ . A steel helmet was seen over the enemy's parapet. It was moved to and fro, Enemy snipers were apparently trying to draw fire from our snipers in hopes of locating their positions.

ENEMY ARTILLERY.

Time	No. of Rounds.	Nature of Gun	Objective.
8.15 a.m.	3	77 mm.	GRANBY AVENUE.
8.35 a.m.	4	Fishtails,	ZOUAVE VALLEY.
10 a.m.	2	4.1	S.20.a.2.5.
10.20 a.m.	2	4.1	ZOUAVE VALLEY
1.30 p.m.	4	77 mm. shrapnel	" "
1.30 p.m.	1	T.M. Heavy	MANDORA NORTH
1.40 p.m.	7 (3 duds)	77 mm.	VINCENT STREET.
2.10 p.m.	4	T.M.	MANDORA CENTRAL
2.40 p.m.	3	T.M.	GRANBY AVENUE.
2 - 3.40 p.m.	24	4.1	SUPPORT LINE.

The last mentioned were fired from the direction of S.22 central  
 The observer was standing at S.20.a.7 $\frac{1}{2}$ .0

(Signed) D.M. McRae,  
 Lieutenant.

AFTERNOON At 1 p.m. our heavy trench mortars and stokes bombarded enemy until 2 p.m. when our mediums started. Enemy retaliation commenced at 2.40 p.m., shells minnies and rifle grenades, increasing in intensity until 3 p.m. on front and support lines. ZOUAVE VALLEY and around Battalion Headquarters. From 3 p.m. on a gradual slackening occurred at 3.50 p.m. normal conditions again existed. Our artillery retaliation seemed effective.

(Signed) Arthur Plow,  
 Lieutenant and Adjutant  
 for O.C. 14th Can. Batt.



## Intelligence Report.

14th Canadian Battalion.....Royal Montreal Regiment.  
December 15th 1916.

PATROL

A patrol of two Officers and three other ranks went out at VINCENT ST. at 10.30 p.m. and returned at 12.30 a.m. at INTERNATIONAL Trench. The patrol approached to within 25 yards of the enemy front line and found that there is no wire of any nature from VINCENT to 20 yards south of the old C.T. leading out from INTERNATIONAL TRENCH. The wire on this last 20 yards consists of only one line of hurdles not over two feet high.

The patrol was back of the line where the wire used to be as evidenced by the pieces of post and wire passed. The ground along the entire enemy front covered was badly torn up and afforded excellent cover right up to the enemy front line, in fact the patrol passed an enemy listening post without being seen.

Numerous working parties were heard that seemed to be strengthening the wire on the enemy support lines. No work was being done on their front line which must have been practically destroyed as men could be seen from the knees up when walking along it.

The listening post referred to was relieved while we were watching it Location S.15.c.38. 4.2 The post consists of two men. In relieving the post the enemy passed within a few yards of the patrol.

The extremely torn up nature of the ground appears to have been caused by T.Ms and Stokes Guns though many craters were so large as to look like those caused by very heavy artillery or a number of T.Ms landing in the same place. As a destroyer of wire, whatever the gun used, it could not be improved upon as not a post was left or a piece of wire more than a couple of feet long. The observation of the patrol was greatly facilitated by leaving one of the scouts stationed in the trench with a 1½" Very Pistol which he fired at prearranged intervals. Before going out his watch was synchronised with those of the patrol and when the appointed time came ~~for~~ each shot the patrol was safely in a shell hole and could obtain a fine close range view of the enemy's lines and state of wire when the star shell went over them and landed behind the enemy's lines thus throwing them into relief. The patrol was fairly safe from observation as they were hidden beforehand and the star shell was fired into the enemy's faces must have practically blinded them.

The old C.T. leading ~~into~~ out from INTERNATIONAL TRENCH has no enemy posts in it further advanced than S.15.c.35.42.

ATTITUDE.

The enemy is very quiet. Not a shot of any kind has been fired during the night. The enemy is evidently repairing his trench on the entire frontage, because working parties are reported in many places

L.P.

Location S.15.a.1.1½ Enemy Listening Post was discovered and fired upon.

(Signed) D. M. McRae,  
Lieutenant.



Intelligence Report

14th Canadian Battalion..... Royal Montreal Regiment.  
December 15th 1916.

ENEMY DEFENCES

Observation was poor owing to low visibility.

- 1: S.15.c.5.4. Fresh earth is visible on parapet, enemy has evidently deepened his trench at this point.
- 2: Enemy has been very busy revetting and deepening his support and communication trenches opposite our front.
- 3: S.15.c.5 $\frac{1}{2}$ .3 $\frac{1}{2}$ . The breastworks of the enemy trench at this point are smoothed down for about five feet as if to allow for the traversing of the machine gun. No armour plate can be seen or anything like a loop hole
- 4: S.15.c.3.5. ~~point~~ A new sniping plate placed during the night at this point has been kept under close observation.
- 5: S.15.c.5.4. Hammering was heard in this vicinity as if nailing timber at 10.20 a.m.

ENEMY MOVEMENTS

- 1: S.15.a.2 $\frac{1}{2}$ . A footpath is visible from the front line back to the support line. This is probably a route taken by working parties at night.
  - 2: S.15.c.4.9. Three men carrying shovels passed low part of communication trench. Time 8.55 a.m.
  - 3: S.15.c.6.7. Two dogs, one a terrier, the other a setter, were seen at this point.
  - 4: S.15.c.1 $\frac{1}{2}$ .7 $\frac{1}{2}$ . Enemy listening post observed relieving at this point at about 5 a.m. They were fired upon, but it is unable to state result.
  - 5: S. Sounds of horse transport moving rapidly were heard behind the enemy lines opposite HARTUNG RIGHT at 6.10 this morning.
  - 6: A railway train was heard by the bombing post at ERSATZ CRATER at 10 this morning.
  - 7: ap An enemy observing plane, shortly after 11 a.m. appeared and flew over our lines coming down low enough to be fired at by our machine guns. It was not fired at by our anti-aircraft guns nor was there one of our planes in the neighbourhood.
- S.15.c.1 $\frac{1}{2}$ .3. NOTE. Two distinct vibrations were felt at this point from underground at 10. a.m.

ENEMY SNIPING

- 1: S.15.c.2 $\frac{1}{2}$ .7.  
S.15.c.3 $\frac{1}{2}$ .5  
S.15.a.1.1 $\frac{1}{2}$  At these points it is suggested that the enemy has put in loop holes which have been fired upon by our snipers.
- 2: S.15.c.5 $\frac{1}{2}$ .3 $\frac{1}{2}$  An enemy periscope was broken at this point by our snipers at 9.40 a.m.

ENEMY ARTILLERY.

During the day the enemy artillery fired the following rounds:-

Time:	No. of Rounds	Nature of Gun	Objective:
10.10 a.m.	20	4.1	ZOUAVE VALLEY
10.30-12.05 p.m.	104	4.1	VINCENT & SNARGATE
12.30- 4.00 p.m.	15 duds	4.1	S;20;b.1.1.
3.00 p.m.	4	4.9	ERSATZ
3.15 p.m.	3	4.9	GORDON AVENUE.
3.20 p.m.	1	Shrapnel	INTERNATIONAL.
3.20 p.m.	6	4.9	ZOUAVE VALLEY
3.25 p.m.	2	4.9	ERSATZ.

Most of these shells came from BOIS DE LA FOLIE.

The enemy did no damage to our trenches except for two direct hits made at the junction of VINCENT and SNARGATE SOUTH.

From the rapidity with which these shells were fired it appears that the enemy's 4.1 artillery has been considerably increased.

OUR ARTILLERY.

Our eighteen pounders were active between 11 and 12 noon and from 3.30 to 3.45 p.m. shelling front and support lines.

From 2.45 to 3.45 our 4.2s were active firing at about one minute intervals.

At 4 p.m. our medium trench mortars fired 55 rounds. At the same time the Stokes Guns fired on the enemy front lines and supports. There was no enemy trench mortar retaliation. His entire retaliation during the day being with artillery.

(Signed) D.M. McRae,  
Lieutenant  
14th Canadian Battalion.





## Intelligence Report

14th Canadian Battalion..... ..Royal Montreal Regiment.

December 16th 1916.

Patrol.

A patrol of one Officer and two other ranks left INTERNATIONAL TRENCH at 10.30 p.m. with the intention of capturing the Listening Post reported last night. The patrol went to within 15 yards of the enemy front line and waited there in order to see the relief for the post go out and thus exactly locate it. At 11.30 p.m. the same time as last night two men were observed to leave the front line and walk towards our line and disappear. After a few moments, two men returned and the patrol started to move in behind the post. At this moment 25 men appeared to come out of the Listening post and go to the front line. Of course the patrol stopped and at that instant one of our prearranged flares went up and we found that the line of men were standing on their own front line parapet and that at this point their trench took a sharp turn towards our line.

The trench at this point was impassable and the men moving along the parapet gave the impression that they were going into "No Mans Land". There is no listening ~~post~~ post here that we could see. We very nearly attacked their front line.

There was a great deal of movement in the enemy lines as three parties of over 25 men each were plainly seen besides many individuals.

There was no sound of work of any kind though we were so close as to hear them walk. The party that was caught on the parapet by the flares carried no rifles and wore no equipment except a very small green olive oblong box strapped on their backs which may have been a gas helmet. As they were not equipped I do not believe it was ~~possibly~~ a relief. The party was carrying no load and was moving from north to south. They may have been a carrying party for a sap on the return trip. No lights were put up when the other parties were visible so cannot say how they were equipped.

The moon came out bright so we could go no farther and after waiting an hour longer for the party to return which it did not do, we returned to our own trench.

ENEMY ARTILLERY .

The enemy was very quiet last night. There were no sounds of working parties. A steam pump opposite Sap A9 was the sound only heard.

Artillery ... Nil.

(Signed) D. M. McRae.  
Lieutenant.



14th Canadian Battalion.....Royal Montreal Regiment;

December 16th 1916.

Enemy's lines were practically invisible all day owing to mist.

ENEMY DEFENCES1. S.15.c.1.1 $\frac{1}{2}$   
to S.15.c.2 $\frac{1}{2}$ .9 $\frac{1}{2}$ .

The enemy has repaired his parapet along this front

ENEMY MOVEMENTS.

1. S.15.c.7.4.

An enemy working party of about ten men seen at this point at 10.10 a.m. They were fired upon by snipers and artillery and were dispersed.

2. S.15.c.4 $\frac{1}{2}$ .4 $\frac{1}{2}$ 

A Hun was seen looking over the parapet into No Mans Land and was fired upon by snipers, Result unknown.

ENEMY SNIPING.

Nil.

ENEMY ARTILLERY

Time.	No. of Rounds.	Nature of Gun.	Objective
1.30 p.m.	20	4.9	TOTTENHAM & ZOUAVE
3.30 p.m.	30	4.1	GRANBY AVENUE.
3.30 p.m.	10	Shrapnel	ZOUAVE VALLEY.

No appreciable damage was done by this fire.

OUR ARTILLERY.Active from 11.45 a.m. to 12.15 p.m. shelling front line and support trenches with 18 pounders. They opened up again at 3.30 p.m. sending over 40 rounds. Our STOKES guns opened up at 1.30 p.m. and effectively shelled location S.15.c.5 $\frac{1}{2}$ .3 $\frac{1}{2}$ AIRCRAFT

An enemy plane flew over our lines at 10.15 a.m. and was sufficiently low to plainly observe our lines. Was driven off by anti-aircraft fire but returned at 11.15 a.m. and was again driven off.

(Signed) D.M.McRae  
Lieutenant.



December 17th 1916.

Patrol.

A patrol of five other ranks left INTERNATIONAL AVENUE and went along both sides of the old communication trench. It examined the trench carefully and found it to be free from wire and all other obstacles. The trench was followed for 100 and fifty yards and there were no signs of occupation. The patrol then turned to the left and followed the enemy wire as far as GRANBY AVENUE. The wire is on the whole rather poor. The patrol then returned to our lines.

Enemy were reported in our wire right of GRANBY AVENUE. The patrol reconnoitred our wire from INTERNATIONAL TO GRANBY AVENUES but could see no traces of the enemy.

During the first patrol numerous small parties of men were seen behind the enemy lines. Their trenches must be in very poor condition as they are obliged to walk overland in many places.

ARTILLERY

There has been no enemy artillery or trench mortar activity during the night.

The enemy is very quiet.

(Signed) D. M. McRae  
Lieutenant.



## DISPOSITION REPORT

Appendix IV/1

14<sup>TH</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION - ROYAL MONTREAL REGIMENT.TUESDAY, 12<sup>TH</sup> DECEMBER, 1916.

23

UNIT	POSITION	OFFICERS	O.R.	MACHINE GUNS	GUNNERS	BOMBERS	SIGNALERS	STRETCHER BEARERS	INTELLIGENCE	TOTALS.
No. 1 Coy.	HARTUNG LEFT AND RIGHT. BROWNS BURROWS	5	91	2	12	-	3	3	-	114 <del>##</del>
No. 2 Coy.	MANDORA NORTH, SNARGATE	5	92	2	12	-	3	3	-	115 <del>##</del>
No. 3 Coy	MANDORA CENTRAL SNARGATE.	4	92	3	16	-	3	3	-	118 <del>##</del>
No. 4 Coy	MANDORA SOUTH, SNARGATE	4	127	3	18	-	3	3	-	155 <del>##</del>
H. Q.		8	28	2	12	5	12	5	18	88 <del>##</del>
TOTALS.		26	430	12	70	5	24	17	18	590 <del>##</del>

*W. H. Jones*  
 for OC Lieutenant & Adjutant  
 14th Canadian Battalion





## SITUATION REPORTS.

Appendix IV/2 24

12.12.16

4.30 p.m.

Situation is very quiet aaa A few shells at 2 p.m. mostly duds near WORTLEY AVENUE aaa practically no sniping, no artillery or aerial activity. Wind West.

13.12.16

4.15 a.m.

Situation aaa During the night there has been very little activity aaa Occasional sniping and a few bursts of machine gun fire aaa No ~~min~~ minenwerfers or artillery activity aaa A few enemy working parties observed aaa Wind aaa Fresh Westerly aaa

14.12.16

4.15 a.m.

Situation aaa Very little activity during night aaa Intermittent bursts of machine Gun Fire aaa No Minnenwerfers or artillery activity aaa Wind aaa Light South aaa

14.12.16

10.22 a.m.

Situation since last report has remained normal aaa Enemy artillery nil, minenwerfer very few aaa Our artillery occasional, trench artillery at irregular intervals aaa Sniping and Machine Gun activity, a little on both sides.aaa Aeroplane activity, Nil Wind S.S.W.

14.12.16

4.22 p.m.

Situation since last report aaa Normal until 1 p.m. when our heavy and Stokes Mortars bombarded enemy until 2 p.m. at which time our mediums started in aaa At 2.40 p.m. enemy started heavy retaliation on front, supports VALLEY and around JACK Headquarters aaa At 3 p.m. enemy activity was very pronounced aaa Our artillery support was satisfactory and by 3.50 p.m. conditions ~~if~~ had returned to normal aaa Enemy retaliation consisted of minenwerfer, shells and rifle grenades aaa Damage and casualties will be sent you later aaa Wind S.S.E.

15.12.16

4.25 a.m.

Situation aaa Very quiet aaa Occasional bursts of Machine gun fire little sniping and no minenwerfer or artillery activity aaa Wind S.E.

16.12.16

4.20 am.

Situation since last reportaaa Since yesterday afternoon our area has been very quiet aaa Occasional single rifle shots, very little machine gun fire, no artillery or minenwerfer activity aaa No sounds from the enemy or unusual occurrences of any kind aaa Weather very bright aaa Wind fresh westerly breeze.

16.12.16

10.20 a.m.

Situation aaa Very quiet aaa Occasional rifle fire, little machine gun fire and no artillery or Minnenwerfer activity aaa Wind S.



HONOURS and AWARDS

Lieutenant Edwin Cowen awarded Military Cross for conspicuous gallantry at the blowing of the MONTREAL CRATER on November 27th 1916.

437460 Pte. Magneison, J.A. )  
63055 " Allard, W. )

Awarded Military Medal for conspicuous gallantry at the blowing of the MONTREAL CRATER on November 27th 1916.



REINFORCEMENTS RECEIVED DURING  
-----

DECEMBER 1916.  
-----

December 4th.....	49	other ranks.
December 5th.....	20	" "
December 11th.....	100	" "
December 16th.....	129	" "
December 23rd.....	154	" "

---

452 Total other ranks.

---

Lieutenant V. E. DUCLOS taken on strength of Battalion on arrival from C. B. D. December 22nd 1916.